1 2

3

10

1 Introduction and overview

- 4 The National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE) is a non-departmental
- 5 public body that provides national guidance and advice to improve health and social
- 6 care in England. This manual explains the processes and methods used to develop
- 7 and update NICE guidelines. For more information on the other types of NICE
- 8 guidance and advice (including technology appraisal guidance), see About NICE on
- 9 the NICE website.

1.1 NICE guidelines

- NICE guidelines make evidence-based recommendations on a wide range of topics,
- from preventing and managing specific conditions, improving health, and managing
- medicines in different settings, to providing social care and support to adults and
- children, and planning broader services and interventions to improve the health of
- communities. They aim to promote individualised care and integrated care (for
- example, by covering transitions between children's and adult services and between
- 17 health and social care).
- 18 Guideline recommendations set out:
- the care and services that are suitable for most people with a specific condition or
- 20 need
- the care and services suitable for particular populations, groups or people in
- 22 particular circumstances or settings (for example, when being discharged from
- hospital)
- ways to promote and protect good health or prevent ill health
- the configuration and provision of health and social care services, and/or
- how national and local public sector organisations and partnerships can improve
- the quality of care and services (for example, how the NHS and social care
- services work together).

- 1 Many guideline recommendations are for individual health and social care
- 2 practitioners, who should use them in their work in conjunction with their own
- 3 judgement and discussion with people using services. Some recommendations are
- 4 for local authorities, commissioners and managers, and cover planning,
- 5 commissioning and improving services; others are for providers (organisations
- 6 providing services), schools, and local and national organisations and partnerships in
- the public, private and voluntary sectors. Guideline recommendations are also useful
- 8 for people who use health and social care services (including people who purchase
- 9 their own social care), their families and carers, and organisations representing their
- 10 interests.
- In addition to the recommendations, guidelines also summarise the evidence behind
- the recommendations and explain how the recommendations were derived from the
- 13 evidence.
- NICE guidelines cover health and care in England. Decisions on how they apply in
- other UK countries are made by ministers in the Welsh Government, Scottish
- 16 Government, and Northern Ireland Executive.

17 1.2 Information about this manual

- 18 This manual explains the processes and methods NICE uses for developing,
- maintaining and updating NICE guidelines. It is primarily for:
- NICE staff involved in developing guidelines
- NICE contractors (such as those doing evidence reviews, economic analysis and
- 22 other engagement work)
- members of the committees that develop the guidelines (see section 1.5).
- 24 It is also likely to be of interest to a broader audience, including developers of other
- 25 guidance, stakeholders and users of NICE guidelines.
- The processes and methods described in this manual are based on internationally
- 27 recognised standards, and the experience and expertise of the teams at NICE, the
- contractors that work with NICE, NICE committee members and stakeholders. They
- are based on internationally accepted criteria of quality, as detailed in the Appraisal
- of Guidelines for Research and Evaluation II (AGREE II) instrument, and primary

- 1 methodological research and evaluation undertaken by the NICE teams. They draw
- 2 on the Guideline Implementability Appraisal tool to ensure that recommendations are
- 3 clear and unambiguous, making them easier to implement.
- 4 This manual describes the development of NICE guidelines from referral through to
- 5 publication, implementation, checking the need for an update and updating. The
- 6 guideline development process is summarised in section 1.6. There is also
- 7 information in chapter 12 on the support NICE provides to help organisations use
- 8 each guideline.
- 9 This manual covers methods and processes for clinical, public health and social care
- topics, and service guidance (see appendix A). The best approach may vary
- depending on the topic; this manual gives alternatives and examples to help choose
- which approach to follow. Options should be considered from the outset, and the
- approach discussed and agreed with NICE staff with responsibility for quality
- 14 assurance. The chosen approach should be documented in the methods for the
- guideline or the individual evidence review, together with the reasons for the choice.
- Decisions will be reviewed for consistency. In exceptional circumstances, significant
- deviations from the methods and process described in this manual may be needed;
- in these cases, NICE's senior management team must approve the approach before
- 19 guideline development begins.

21

20 All guidelines produced using this manual are known as NICE guidelines.

1.3 Choice of guideline topics

- 22 NICE guidelines are a key source for the development of NICE quality standards and
- therefore new guidelines developed by NICE are usually chosen from a library of
- topics for quality standards and then agreed with the relevant commissioning body
- 25 (NHS England or the Department of Health and Social Care).
- Decisions on which library topics to develop guidelines on, and in what order, are
- 27 based on factors such as:
- whether there is existing <u>NICE-accredited guidance</u> on which to base a quality
- standard that encompasses the whole of the topic

- the priority given to the topic by commissioners and professional organisations,
- and organisations for people using services, their families and carers.
- 3 A topic selection oversight group at NICE considers topics for guideline
- 4 development, taking these factors into account. NICE then discusses topics
- 5 identified in this way with NHS England, the Department of Health and Social Care,
- 6 and Public Health England, and a prioritised list is agreed by these 3 bodies.
- 7 Topics are then formally referred to NICE and scheduled into NICE's guideline
- 8 development plans.

9 1.4 Key principles for developing guidelines

- 10 NICE develops guidelines according to the following core principles:
- Guidance is based on the best available evidence of what works, and what it costs.
- Guidance is developed by independent and unbiased committees of experts.
- All our committees include at least 2 lay members (people with personal
- experience of using, health or care services, including carers, or from a
- community affected by the guideline).
- Regular consultation allows organisations and individuals to comment on our
- 18 recommendations.
- Once published, all NICE guidance is regularly checked, and updated in light of
- 20 new evidence or intelligence if necessary.
- We are committed to advancing equality of opportunity and ensuring that the
- social value judgements we make reflect the values of society.
- We ensure that our processes, methods and policies remain up-to-date.

24 Using the best available evidence to develop recommendations

- NICE guideline recommendations are based on the best available evidence. We use
- 26 a wide range of different types of evidence and other information from scientific
- 27 research using a variety of methods, to testimony from practitioners and people
- 28 using services.
- 29 Review questions guide the search for evidence, and the type of evidence used
- depends on the type of question (see chapter 4). For example, a randomised

- controlled trial is often the most appropriate type of study to assess the efficacy or
- 2 effectiveness (including cost effectiveness) of an intervention. However, a range of
- 3 other non-randomised evidence such as observational [including real world]
- 4 evidence, experimental and qualitative evidence may also be used to inform
- 5 assessments of effectiveness, or aspects of effectiveness. This evidence may
- 6 include ways of delivering services, or the experience of people using services and
- 7 how this contributes to outcomes. For some topics, there is little evidence from
- 8 scientific studies, or the evidence is weak or contradictory. In these cases, we look
- 9 for evidence from other sources to see if it concurs or differs ('triangulation'). When
- there is little or no evidence, the committee may also use expert testimony, make
- consensus recommendations using their knowledge and experience or make
- 12 recommendations for further research.
- 13 Whatever evidence is used, it is selected and quality assessed using clear and
- appropriate methods (see chapters 5, 6 and 7). NICE is currently exploring the
- impact that evidence generated from real world data, and the use of big data
- analytics, could have on the way we develop and update guidelines and the methods
- we use. This is a rapidly evolving area, and suggestions from guideline developers,
- academics and other stakeholders are encouraged during consultation regarding
- 19 how and when these approaches should be used.

20 Involving people affected by the guideline

- 21 When developing guidelines, NICE involves people who might be affected by the
- 22 guideline recommendations in a collaborative and transparent way. This includes
- commissioners, practitioners and others involved in providing services. People using
- health and care services, carers and the public also contribute to ensure that
- 25 guidelines address issues relevant to them, reflect their views, and meet their health
- and social care needs.
- 27 There are 2 main ways to get involved: organisations can register as a stakeholder
- and individuals can join (or advise) a committee that works on guidelines. There is
- 29 more information about stakeholders and committee members in <u>section 1.5</u> and in
- 30 our guide for stakeholders and the public.

- 1 The Public Involvement Programme at NICE provides advice and support to
- 2 committees, developers and NICE staff, about involving the public in developing
- 3 NICE guidelines. A public involvement adviser is allocated to each topic.
- 4 Practitioners and people who use health and care services, family members, carers
- 5 and the public may also be involved as:
- expert witnesses invited to give testimony to the committee (see section 3.5)
- members of a reference group, focus group or other advisory group set up when
- standard involvement and consultation processes are likely to be insufficient (for
- example, when the topic covers a population group that is not part of the
- committee, such as children or adults with severe learning disabilities; see
- 11 section 10.1).

12 Advancing equality and making social value judgements

- NICE is committed to ensuring that its guideline development process:
- fully meets duties under the Equality Act (2010) to have due regard to the need to
- eliminate discrimination, foster good relations and advance equality of opportunity
- in relation to people who share the protected characteristics of age, disability,
- gender reassignment, marriage and civil partnership, pregnancy and maternity,
- 18 race, religion or belief, sex, and sexual orientation, including the public sector
- equality duty to tackle discrimination and provide equality of opportunity for all
- enables it to meet requirements under the Human Rights Act (1998).
- 21 NICE's equality objectives and equality programme 2016–2020 summarises NICE's
- legal and other obligations and describes NICE's approach to meeting them,
- particularly the process of equality impact assessment. NICE uses this approach to
- 24 consider not just equality in relation to groups sharing the characteristics protected
- by the Equality Act (2010) but also health inequalities arising from socioeconomic
- factors or associated with the shared circumstances, behaviours or conditions of
- 27 particular groups (for example, looked-after children, people who are homeless,
- people who misuse drugs and people in prison). Identifying such groups is an aspect
- of NICE's compliance with both general public law requirements to act fairly and
- reasonably, and human rights obligations.

- 1 NICE guidelines, and the procedures NICE uses to develop them, also take account
- 2 of NICE's principles on social value judgements (see the entry on social value
- 3 judgements in our glossary).

1.5 Who is involved

5 The committee

4

- 6 The committee is the independent advisory group that considers the evidence and
- 7 develops the recommendations, taking into account the views of stakeholders. It may
- 8 be a standing committee working on many guideline topics, or a topic-specific
- 9 committee put together to work on a specific guideline (see chapter 3). Committee
- members include practitioners (both specialists in the topic and generalists), service
- or care providers or commissioners, and others working in the area covered by the
- guideline (see chapter 3). In addition, at least 2 members of every committee are
- people using services, their family members or carers, or members of the public and
- community or voluntary sector with relevant experience (lay members).
- 15 If needed for a topic, the committee can co-opt members with specific expertise to
- 16 contribute to developing some of the recommendations (see sections 3.3 and 3.4).

17 Registered stakeholders

- 18 Registered stakeholders are organisations that have registered with NICE because
- 19 they have an interest in the guideline topic, or they represent people whose practice
- or care may be directly affected by the guideline. They play an important role in
- developing and advocating for, or implementing, NICE guidelines. During guideline
- 22 development NICE keeps registered stakeholders informed of progress by email.
- 23 NICE also adds information on progress to the guideline page on the NICE website.
- 24 The schedule for the guideline, the scope and details of the committee are also
- available on the NICE website.
- 26 Stakeholder organisations are encouraged to get involved in guideline development
- in a range of ways. The NICE website explains how to register as a stakeholder and
- how to contribute to the development of a guideline. Registered stakeholders
- comment on the draft scope and draft guideline, and they may be invited to provide
- 30 evidence during guideline development. NICE formally responds to all comments

- from registered stakeholders, and these responses are published on the NICE
- website. Stakeholders support implementation of the guideline once it is published.
- 3 Stakeholders include:
- national organisations for people who use health and social care services, their
- 5 families and carers, and the public
- local <u>Healthwatch</u> organisations and local organisations that have no national
- 7 group to participate on their behalf
- national organisations that represent health and social care practitioners and other
- 9 relevant professionals whose practice may be affected by the guideline, or who
- can influence uptake of the guideline recommendations
- public sector providers and commissioners of care or services (for example, GP
- 12 practices)
- private, voluntary sector and other independent providers of care or services
- companies that manufacture medicines, devices, equipment or adaptations, and
- commercial industries relevant to public health (excluding the tobacco industry)
- organisations that fund or carry out research
- government departments and national statutory agencies
- overseas agencies with a remit covering England.
- 19 Individuals cannot register as stakeholders but NICE encourages anyone with an
- interest in the topic to express their views to a registered stakeholder listed on the
- 21 guideline page on the NICE website. Although NICE will consider comments on the
- draft scope and guideline from individuals, we do not have the resources to write
- 23 responses to these comments.
- Local or regional professional or practitioner groups, and local or regional groups for
- 25 people who use health and social care services cannot register as stakeholders
- unless there is no national organisation that represents the group's specific interests.
- 27 Although NICE is established as an England-only body, our guidelines are used in
- other countries in the UK. We want our guidelines to be useful in these countries, so
- 29 encourage stakeholders from anywhere in the UK to take part in developing them.

- 1 Tobacco companies with an interest in a particular guideline topic can register to
- 2 comment on the draft scope and the draft guideline. Their comments are carefully
- 3 considered and are made public with those of registered stakeholders. However, the
- 4 term 'respondent' rather than 'stakeholder' is used for a tobacco company to
- 5 acknowledge NICE's commitment to Article 5.3 of the WHO Framework Convention
- on Tobacco Control. This sets out an obligation to protect the development of public
- 7 health policy from any vested interests of the tobacco industry.

8 NICE staff and contractors who work with the committee

- 9 The committees are assisted by teams whose work covers guideline development,
- 10 evidence review and support, and quality assurance.
- 11 These teams are represented at committee meetings and contribute to discussions.
- 12 They are not committee members, do not contribute to the guorum of the committee
- or the development of recommendations during meetings, and do not hold voting
- 14 rights.

15 Quality assurance by NICE

- NICE staff carry out quality assurance of the guideline to ensure that the process has
- been followed appropriately, and that the methods are clear and transparent. This
- includes ensuring that the reviews of the evidence and any economic analysis are
- 19 up-to-date, credible, robust and relevant. They also check that there is a valid link
- between the evidence and the recommendations. These staff may also be
- responsible for commissioning the developer. Quality assurance takes place
- 22 throughout guideline development; key tasks are referred to in relevant sections of
- this manual.
- 24 The NICE **centre director** is responsible for ensuring that the guideline is produced
- in accordance with this manual. The centre director is also responsible for appointing
- the committee chair and committee members.
- 27 The NICE **guideline lead** is responsible for the development and quality assurance
- of the guideline (including the scope), and has delegated responsibility for approving
- the consultation draft and the final guideline, before approval by NICE's <u>Guidance</u>
- 30 <u>Executive</u>. The guideline lead also advises the committee chair and the developer on

- 1 matters of method and process. Guideline commissioning managers help them with
- 2 this.
- 3 The NICE **adviser** is responsible for providing advice during all stages of guideline
- 4 development.
- 5 The NICE **technical lead** is responsible for ensuring the technical quality of the
- 6 non-economic evidence reviews.
- 7 The NICE **economic lead** is responsible for ensuring the technical quality of the
- 8 economic evidence and any economic analysis.

9 **Development**

- 10 The **developer** may be a team within NICE, or in an organisation contracted by
- NICE to develop guidelines. The developer is responsible for scoping the guideline,
- supporting the committee and documenting the recommendations, committee
- discussions and decisions, evidence reviews and methods.
- 14 Administrators, coordinators and project managers provide administrative and
- management support to the committee, planning and scheduling the work, arranging
- meetings, liaising with stakeholders and all individuals and organisations contributing
- to the development of guidelines.
- 18 The evidence review team (comprising an information specialist, systematic
- reviewer and for most guidelines an economist) identifies, reviews and summarises
- the evidence, and undertakes economic analyses. Sometimes developers may
- 21 commission other organisations to review the evidence.
- 22 The **information specialist** identifies relevant literature to answer the review
- 23 questions (see chapter 5), creates databases to manage the search results and
- 24 keeps a log of search results and strategies.
- 25 The **systematic reviewer** critically appraises the evidence, distils it into evidence
- tables and writes brief summaries (including GRADE tables, GRADE-CERQual or
- evidence statements, if used) for presentation to the committee (see chapter 6). The
- 28 reviewer also summarises the main issues with the evidence for the committee and
- 29 contributes to their discussions.

- 1 For most guidelines, an **economist** identifies potential economic issues in
- 2 discussion with the committee, summarises the published economic evidence and
- performs additional economic analyses as needed (see chapter 7).

4 Support

- 5 Staff from other NICE teams work on the guidelines at different stages. They may
- 6 attend committee meetings and comment on the guideline during consultation and at
- 7 other times.

8 NICE media relations team

- 9 The media relations team support committee members, the developer, and NICE
- staff with responsibility for quality assurance, on all aspects of communications,
- including contacts with the media and managing any issues, throughout guideline
- development and after publication.

13 NICE resource impact assessment team

- 14 The resource impact assessment team work with the committee, and NICE staff
- carrying out quality assurance, to provide information on the resource impact (costs
- and savings) of recommendations. Final cost estimates are available to support the
- implementation of the guideline.

18 **NICE** adoption and impact team

- 19 The adoption and impact team produces tools and signposts to other support that
- 20 can help organisations put guideline recommendations into practice. The
- 21 implementation support team works with external organisations on selected priority
- 22 areas, which depend on the interests of our partner organisations and resources.

23 **NICE system engagement team**

- 24 The system engagement team includes the field team who work with regional and
- local organisations to promote the guideline and help to put it into practice. The NICE
- 26 endorsement and shared learning programmes also support implementation with
- 27 external resources and implementation case study examples.

28 **NICE Public Involvement Programme**

- 29 The Public Involvement Programme (PIP) advises on ways to effectively involve
- people who use health and care services, family members, carers and the public,

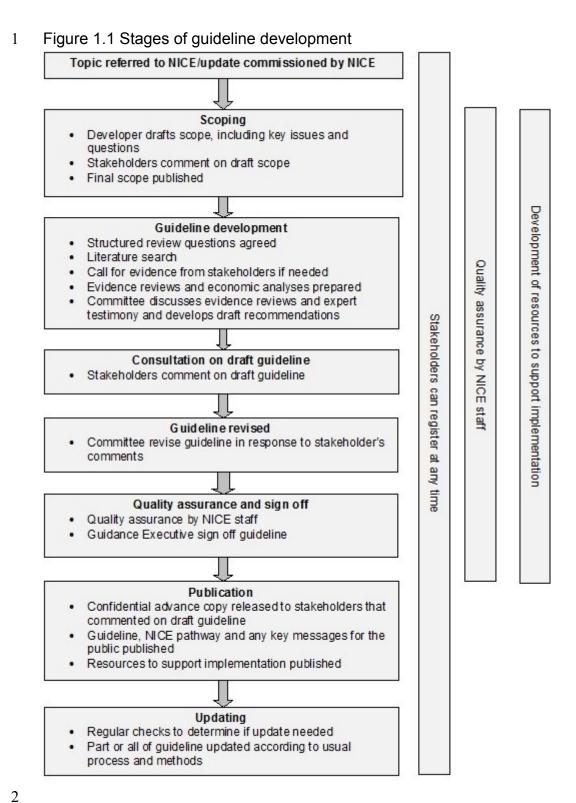
- and supports their participation in guideline development. PIP encourages
- 2 organisations representing service user, carer and community interests to register as
- 3 stakeholders. It also advertises for people using services, carers and the public to
- 4 apply to join committees and supports them in their roles as committee members.

5 **NICE publishing team**

- 6 Editors from the publishing team work with the committee, the developer and NICE
- 7 staff with responsibility for guideline quality assurance. They ensure that the
- 8 guideline and related products are written and presented in a way that is clear and
- 9 accessible to a range of different audiences. They develop the NICE pathway (which
- brings together everything NICE says on a topic in an interactive flowchart) and for
- some topics may produce a visual summary of the recommendations.

12 **1.6 Main stages of guideline development**

- 13 The development time for guidelines is usually between 12 and 27 months (from the
- start of scoping to publication), depending on the size and scope of the topic.
- 15 Figure 1.1 summarises the main stages.



1.7 Publication and implementation of the guideline

3

- 4 Guideline recommendations are published on the NICE website alongside the
- 5 rationales for the recommendations, evidence reviews, including summaries of the
- 6 committee discussions, and methods. Any resources to help users implement the
- 7 guideline are also published. The guideline recommendations and rationales for the

- recommendations are also included in <u>NICE Pathways</u> an online tool that brings
- 2 together everything NICE says on a topic in an interactive flowchart. Pathways are
- 3 structured and sign-posted so users can find relevant recommendations quickly and
- 4 easily. They are not care pathways.
- 5 Resources to help people put the guideline into practice include tools that help users
- 6 assess what needs to change. These resources inform action planning or audit,
- 7 estimate costs and savings to help build a business case, or meet the education and
- 8 learning needs of practitioners (see chapter 12 for information about the support
- 9 available to help implement guideline recommendations).

1.8 Updating this manual

- 11 The formal process for updating this manual will begin 3 years after publication. In
- 12 exceptional circumstances, and only if significant changes to the process or methods
- of guideline development are anticipated, this interval will be reduced to 2 years.
- 14 When significant changes are made, there will be a stakeholder consultation. The
- updated manual will then be published, along with a list of changes from the previous
- version of the manual. Stakeholders involved in guidelines under development at the
- time of the change will be notified if they are affected by the change. Stakeholders of
- newly commissioned guidelines will be advised to consult the website at the start of
- the project to familiarise themselves with the updated manual.
- We welcome comments on the content of this manual and suggested subjects for
- inclusion in the next update. These should be addressed to nice@nice.org.uk.

22 Interim updates

10

- 23 In some situations, it may be necessary to make small changes to the manual before
- 24 a formal update is due. These may be either minor, insubstantial changes or more
- 25 significant changes for which formal consultation with stakeholders is necessary.
- New methods may be piloted before formal consultation, to fully assess the
- implications before recommending changes. For small changes to be put in place
- without stakeholder consultation, they must fulfil all of the following criteria:
- no fundamental stage in the process is added or removed
- no fundamental method, technique or step is either added or removed

- no stakeholders will obviously be disadvantaged
- the efficiency, clarity or fairness of the process or methodology will be improved.
- 3 Changes that meet all of these criteria will be published on the NICE website. The
- 4 manual will be updated, and changes from the previous version of the manual will be
- 5 listed.

6 1.9 References and further reading

- 7 Craig P, Cooper C, Gunnell D et al. on behalf of the MRC (2011) Using natural
- 8 experiments to evaluate population health interventions: guidance for producers and
- 9 users of evidence. London: Medical Research Council
- 10 Davidson K, Goldstein M, Kaplan RM et al. (2003) Evidence-based behavioral
- medicine: what it is and how do we achieve it? Annals of Behavioral Medicine 26:
- 12 161–71
- Dixon-Woods M, Agarwal S, Young B et al. (2004) Integrative approaches to
- 14 qualitative and quantitative evidence. London: Health Development Agency
- 15 Graham H, Kelly MP (2004) Health inequalities: concepts, frameworks and policy.
- 16 London: Health Development Agency
- 17 Kelly MP, Stewart E, Morgan A et al. (2009) A conceptual framework for public
- health: NICE's emerging approach. Public Health 123: e14–20
- 19 Kelly MP, Morgan A, Ellis S et al. (2010) Evidence-based public health: A review of
- the experience of the National Institute of Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) of
- 21 developing public health guidance in England. Social Science and Medicine
- 22 71:1056–62
- Lomas J, Culyer T, McCutcheon C et al. (2005) Conceptualizing and combining
- 24 evidence for health system guidance: final report. Ottawa: Canadian Health Services
- 25 Research Foundation
- 26 Michie S, Berentson-Shaw J, Pilling S et al. (2007) <u>Turning evidence into</u>
- 27 recommendations: protocol for a study of guideline development group.
- 28 Implementation Science 2: 29

- Ogilvie D, Hamilton V, Egan M et al. (2005) Systematic reviews of health effects of
- 2 social interventions: 1. Finding the evidence: how far should you go? Journal of
- 3 Epidemiology and Community Health 59: 804–8
- 4 Ogilvie D, Egan M, Hamilton V et al. (2005) Systematic reviews of health effects of
- 5 social interventions: 2. Best available evidence: how low should you go? Journal of
- 6 Epidemiology and Community Health 59: 886–92
- 7 Pawson R (2006) Evidence-based policy: a realist perspective. London: Sage
- 8 Popay J, editor (2005) Moving beyond effectiveness in evidence synthesis:
- 9 <u>methodological issues in the synthesis of diverse sources of evidence.</u> London:
- 10 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence
- 11 Victora C, Habicht J, Bryce J (2004) Evidence-based public health: moving beyond
- 12 <u>randomized trials</u>. American Journal of Public Health 94: 400–5

2 The scope

- 2 The scope sets out what a NICE guideline will and will not cover. Preparing the
- 3 scope is the first step in developing a guideline. The scope is used to create a
- 4 framework for the development work (see chapters 4 to 7).

5 **2.1** Purpose of the scope

- 6 The scope sets boundaries that ensure the work stays within the referral and the
- 7 resulting guideline can support any relevant quality standard (see section 1.3). The
- 8 scope:

1

- defines the population(s) and setting(s) that will and will not be covered
- describes what the guideline will and will not consider
- identifies the key issues that will be considered and lists the draft questions
- describes the economic perspective(s) to be used.
- 13 The scope also includes:
- a brief description of the guideline topic (for example, a description of the
- 15 condition or disease, health or social care services, organisation of services, or
- areas of public health practice)
- a brief overview of the context (current policy and practice) in which the guideline
- will be developed
- a summary of why the guideline is needed and where it will add value, including
- 20 how the relationship between commissioners and providers may affect outcomes
- 21 and costs
- how the guideline will build on, rather than simply reproduce, the actions required
- by legislation and statutory guidance
- how the guideline will link to other NICE recommendations and quality standards
- 25 that are published or in development (chapter 8).
- a draft outline of the NICE Pathway (everything NICE says on a topic in an
- 27 interactive flowchart)
- potential equality issues among groups sharing protected characteristics and how
- these will be considered

- health inequalities associated with socioeconomic factors and with inequities in
- 2 access for certain groups to healthcare and social care, and opportunities to
- improve health.
- 4 The title of the guideline (as given in the scope) should accurately reflect the content
- of the scope. Occasionally, it may be necessary when preparing the scope to seek
- 6 clarification from the commissioning body (see section 1.3) on the referral (for
- 7 example, to clarify how the NICE guideline will add value in relation to existing
- 8 non-NICE guidance or to specify the boundaries and the extent of the work).
- 9 When a guideline is being updated, the scope of the existing guideline may be used
- unchanged, the scope of the existing guideline may be modified or a new scope
- developed for the guideline update. The scope lists which sections will be updated,
- and any that will be removed, for example, because they are now covered by other
- NICE guidance or by legislation or other sources of advice, or are no longer current
- 14 practice.

15

2.2 Who is involved in developing the scope

- 16 The draft scope is prepared by the developer or by a team at NICE, with other input
- depending on the guideline topic. Topic-specific expertise may be provided by
- members of the committee (if early appointment is appropriate) and the topic adviser
- if there is one (see section 3.4). Lay expertise may be provided by 1 or more lay
- 20 people recruited specifically to support scope development, or 1 or more lay
- 21 members of the committee if early recruitment is appropriate.
- When several related guidelines are being developed simultaneously, cross-
- representation of expertise on each scoping group may also be considered.
- 24 The following are usually involved:
- a lead from NICE's Pathways team
- a lead from NICE's Public Involvement Programme
- a lead from NICE's resource impact assessment team
- the developer's information specialist, systematic reviewer and economist
- NICE staff with responsibility for quality assurance.

- 1 The draft scope is signed off by a senior NICE staff member with responsibility for
- 2 quality assurance.

3 2.3 Stages of scope development

- 4 The scope is developed in 7 stages:
- stage 1: the scoping search
- <u>stage 2</u>: understanding the context
- 7 <u>stage 3</u>: identifying the population and key issues
- 8 stage 4: identifying and making decisions on overlaps with other NICE guidance
- <u>stage 5</u>: checking the population and selected key issues with stakeholders
- stage 6: consulting on the draft scope
- stage 7: finalising the scope after consultation.

12 Stage 1: the scoping search

- 13 To support scope development a scoping search is undertaken. The first step is to
- identify related NICE guidance. This is done by the developer's information specialist
- and is updated if new issues are identified at a scoping workshop_(if this is held).
- 16 The search for other types of evidence to support scope development should identify
- 17 any appropriate:
- guidance from other developers
- policy and legislation
- key systematic reviews and epidemiological reviews
- economic evaluations
- information on current practice, including costs and resource use and any safety
- 23 concerns
- types of interventions that may be appropriate and their safety
- statistics (for example, on epidemiology or service configuration), national
- prevalence data and data on the natural history of the condition
- information on the views and experiences of people using services, their family
- 28 members or carers, or the public.

- 1 The sources searched should be informed by the topic, the type of questions the
- 2 guideline will seek to address and the type(s) of evidence sought.
- 3 The search should not aim to be exhaustive. It should be based on the need to
- 4 inform the development of the draft scope and the issues to be discussed at a
- 5 scoping workshop (if this is held). The search can also reveal the evidence base,
- 6 start to identify evidence gaps and indicate whether there is sufficient evidence to
- 7 answer the draft questions. At this stage, tools that cluster search results into topics
- 8 can be helpful. The search should focus on identifying high-level information, such
- 9 as reviews of the evidence. If there is insufficient high-level information, the scoping
- search should be extended to a key database to identify relevant primary studies.
- When searching for systematic reviews, it may be efficient to limit any searches of
- databases that are sources for <u>DARE</u> (Database of Abstracts of Reviews of Effects)
- to studies indexed after December 2014, when the searches to identify studies for
- 14 DARE ceased.
- 15 In some cases, a scoping search for economic evidence may be conducted (see
- 16 section 7.4).
- 17 Appendix F provides a list of suggested sources for the scoping search.
- For a guideline that is an update of existing NICE guidance, and for which the scope
- is being modified, the developer can use any background information (including
- briefing papers and searches undertaken as part of the process for reaching an
- update decision) to inform the searches at the scoping stage. (See chapters 13 and
- 22 14 for information on updating guidelines.)
- 23 More information on identifying evidence to support guideline development is
- 24 provided in chapter 5.
- 25 When gaps in the evidence are identified, NICE staff with responsibility for quality
- assurance, the developer or committee members (if recruited early) may believe that
- there is relevant evidence not identified by the searches. In these cases, the
- developer should start to compile a list of the gaps during scoping, along with details
- of stakeholders who might be able to provide information, as part of a call for
- evidence (see section 5.5) or as expert witnesses (see section 3.5).

1 Stage 2: understanding the context

- 2 In order to develop guidelines that identify and promote effective practice, it is
- 3 important to understand current context. Context can include:
- the reason for referral of the topic
- the burden of disease
- the differential impact of disease or services and outcomes (in relation to
- 7 socioeconomic factors or equity issues)
- how care and support is currently delivered and who is responsible for
- 9 commissioning and providing it
- the cost of care and support
- workforce issues and variance in service organisation
- 12 use of interventions
- legislative or regulatory frameworks
- or user experience and safety concerns.
- 15 Understanding the current context and how the guideline topic fits within this context
- will help to ensure that:
- the guideline focuses on achieving improvement in areas where it is most needed
- potential implementation issues and resource impact are identified early and used
- to inform the guideline and relevant resources.
- 20 The developer continues to collect contextual information during development so that
- the guideline can adapt to changes in context.

22 Using a conceptual framework to construct a logic model

- 23 For some guidelines, it may be helpful to construct a topic- or question-specific
- conceptual framework. Two different, but interlinked, models can be used: problem-
- oriented and design-oriented.
- A problem-oriented conceptual model can aid understanding of existing or planned
- interventions or services and identify areas for improvement. It provides information
- on how factors interact and ensures that key areas are approached in the most
- 29 logical and efficient way. It helps to focus questions, as well as identifying how the
- discrete questions are linked and how much of the intervention or service will be

- 1 covered. A problem-oriented conceptual model can be developed as part of the
- 2 scoping process (for example, at the stakeholder scoping workshop) and should not
- 3 be limited by what is feasible.
- 4 The problem-oriented model links to a design-oriented conceptual model (or logic
- 5 model), which is used to inform the structure, assumptions and data needed for
- 6 simulation models (implementation models) to assess effectiveness (including cost
- 7 effectiveness). The design-oriented model can also be used to help structure the
- 8 review questions and to specify the data and evidence needed to develop an
- 9 economic model to inform recommendations.

10 Stage 3: identifying the population and key issues

- Stage 3 includes identifying the population and considering the key issues for
- inclusion in the scope. These may have emerged during preliminary work, or may be
- identified by the scoping search, by considering any health inequalities and impacts
- on equality, and consulting experts.
- 15 Identifying the population is critical because it helps determine the breadth and depth
- of the work. It also means that feasible measures can be included in any related
- 17 NICE quality standard.
- 18 Identifying the key issues ensures that the guideline focuses on areas in which
- 19 providers and commissioners of care and support, or services most need advice. For
- 20 example, areas in which there is unacceptable variation in practice or uncertainty
- 21 about best practice, areas of unsafe practice, uncertainty around the optimal service
- 22 configuration, or where new evidence suggests current practice may not be optimal.
- 23 It may also be important to identify populations in which interventions may have
- 24 different effects for example, subgroups with different responses to
- 25 pharmacological interventions resulting from underlying genetic variation.
- 26 Consideration should be given as to whether there are specific aspects of the views
- or experiences of people using services that need addressing. When these are
- 28 identified, they should be included in the scope if they are not covered by existing
- 29 guidelines and are supported as a priority area (see chapter 4).

- 1 Guidelines do not usually include key issues that are covered by other arms-length
- 2 or government bodies such as the Department of Health and Social Care, NHS
- 3 England or Public Health England. They do not usually cover training requirements,
- 4 because these are the responsibility of the Royal Colleges and professional
- 5 associations, but they may make recommendations on the need for specific
- 6 knowledge and skills for a particular aspect of care.
- 7 The process should ensure that a range of care and support, or services is
- 8 considered, including key areas for quality improvement, and that the resulting
- 9 guideline can be used to inform the development or update of a NICE quality
- 10 standard.

11 Equality issues at the scoping stage

- During development of the scope, it is important to consider and assess any equality
- issues to establish:
- whether there is any risk of unlawful discrimination arising from the guideline and
- any opportunities for advancing equality
- whether there might need to be reasonable adjustments to a recommendation to
- avoid putting any group of people covered by the scope at a substantial
- 18 disadvantage
- whether, and to what extent, particular equality issues should be included in the
- scope.

25

- 21 Considerations should be reflected in the equality impact assessment. The draft
- scope should set out the groups or issues that have been identified for specific
- consideration including, when relevant, a statement to indicate that no groups or
- 24 issues have been identified.

Identifying and prioritising key issues

- 26 Box 2.1 lists the criteria (including relevant equality issues) that should be
- 27 considered when identifying and prioritising key issues, health inequalities and
- impacts on equality. At this stage, the developer (in discussion with NICE staff with
- 29 responsibility for quality assurance) should also consider the composition of the
- committee, and the approach to be taken when key population groups are excluded

- 1 from committee membership (for example, for topics covering children see section
- 2 3.2 and appendix B).
- 3 Box 2.1 Factors to consider when identifying and prioritising key issues for
- 4 inclusion in the draft scope

Uncertainty or disagreement on best practice

Is there variation in current care provision and practice?

Is there variation in the level of integration of care and support for people using services or accessing care?

Is there evidence suggesting that common practice may not be best practice? Is there debate in the literature?

Potential to improve outcomes or make better use of resources

How many people are affected and in which age groups or sectors of the population?

What is the potential for improved outcomes at acceptable cost?

What is the potential for reducing ineffective care?

What is the potential to provide care and support in a more efficient way (for example, through organisation of services to integrate care and support, or telecare)? Are there safety concerns that need addressing?

What is the potential for achieving cost savings with acceptable outcomes?

What is the potential for improving employment outcomes among people out of work because of ill health?

Potential for avoiding unlawful discrimination, advancing equality and reducing health inequalities

Are there any health inequalities or impacts on equality?

Are there any specific access issues (for example, by population, geographical location or group sharing a protected characteristic)?

Are exclusions (for example, populations, interventions or settings, or groups sharing a protected characteristic) justified?

Have all relevant mental health issues been considered, including where topics focus on physical health problems?

Are there any specific issues for people with a learning disability?

Do inequalities in prevalence, access, outcomes or quality of care and support for any groups (particularly those sharing protected characteristics) need to be addressed by the scope?

Might there be a need to consider reasonable adjustments for a particular group when making recommendations?

Likelihood that the guideline could contribute to change

Is a new review of the evidence or an economic evaluation likely to reduce existing uncertainties?

How does the guideline fit with existing legal frameworks, statutory and professional guidance or government policies, and what is its anticipated impact?

What is the potential for achieving consensus within the committee and in the wider stakeholder community?

Other important factors

Will the guideline update or incorporate any recommendations in other published NICE guidance?

Will the guideline take into account other NICE guidance (for example, technology appraisal guidance)?

How does the topic relate to existing NICE Pathways?

Where is it proposed that the topic will fit into NICE Pathways?

Are there any particular issues about how the topic will be incorporated into NICE Pathways, or about how it should be presented in NICE Pathways?

- 1 Key issues and draft questions addressing these issues should be included in the
- 2 scope. Depending on the type of guideline, whether it is an update (see chapter 14)
- and the type of question, these could be very high level or could more precisely
- 4 describe the populations, interventions, or particular approaches and aspects of
- 5 service delivery to be compared and the outcomes of interest (see chapter 4). These
- 6 draft questions will be used as the basis for the final review questions (see
- 7 chapter 4) in the guideline.
- 8 Examples of key issues and draft questions are shown in box 2.2.
- 9 Box 2.2 Examples of key issues and draft questions that could be included in
- 10 draft scopes for consultation

Issues relating to services

Rehabilitation programmes to support people back to work

Integration of services to support people after a stroke

Draft questions relating to services

What types of rehabilitation programmes should be provided to support people back to work?

What types of nurses and how many are needed to provide safe care in adult intensive care units?

How can services be organised to provide integrated and coordinated support to people after a stroke?

Issues relating to interventions

Training to assist foster carers in managing difficult behaviour

Pharmacological interventions to treat pneumonia

Digital interventions to support behaviour change

Identifying pregnant women who smoke

Draft questions relating to interventions

What training should be provided to assist foster carers in managing difficult behaviour?

What antibiotics should be used and for how long when treating pneumonia?

What interventions (or types of interventions) are effective at identifying pregnant women who smoke?

What interventions (including those focused on the arts) are effective in treating mild to moderate depression?

Issue relating to experience of people using services

Information and support for people with epilepsy

Coordination and integration of support for people with learning disabilities

Making structural changes to homes to support independent living

Draft question relating to experience of people using services

What are the information and support needs of people with epilepsy, and how should these be met?

How does coordinated/integrated support (or the lack of it) affect the experience of people with learning disabilities?

Issues relating to health inequalities and equality

Differential access to services or treatment for different population groups, including those sharing a protected characteristic

Draft key questions relating to health inequalities and equality

How can structural interventions and aids to support independent living be delivered for people who live in rented accommodation?

2 Identifying the main outcomes

1

- 3 The scope should include a section listing the main outcomes of interest to be used
- 4 when considering the evidence. This need not be an exhaustive list, but should
- 5 always include quality of life and some important condition- or service-specific
- 6 outcomes that are important to people receiving care and support or using services.

27 of 210

- or those providing care and support or services. Core outcome sets should be used
- 2 if these are suitable based on quality and validity; one source is the COMET
- 3 database. The Core Outcome Set Standards for Development (COS-STAD) and
- 4 Core Outcome Set Standards for Reporting (COS-STAR) should be used to assess
- 5 suitability. The outcome list is likely to include capability, functioning, effectiveness,
- 6 cost effectiveness, resource use and safety. It is also desirable to specify any
- 7 negative effects of different approaches such as adverse effects of treatment, or
- 8 aspects of service delivery considered in the guideline (see also appendix A).
- 9 Stage 4: identifying and making decisions on overlaps with other guidance
- 10 Identifying related NICE guidance (both published and in development) is a key
- element of scoping. This helps to see where and how the guideline
- recommendations are likely to relate to existing recommendations in other guidance.
- 13 Because NICE Pathways bring together everything NICE says on a topic, they
- should be used to identify potential overlap between guidelines and to inform
- stakeholders of the range of relevant published NICE guidance.
- 16 This process should aim to identify any gaps where new recommendations would be
- of value, and areas where recommendations already exist (see chapter 8).
- 18 The publishing team at NICE develops an outline of the NICE Pathway in
- collaboration with the developer to support the development of the scope.
- 20 Stage 5: checking the population and selected key issues with stakeholders
- 21 It is important to seek the views of stakeholders to confirm that the population
- group(s) and key issues identified by the developer are relevant and appropriate.
- 23 This includes organisations led by people using services, and organisations that
- represent the interests of people with the condition or people using services and their
- 25 family members or carers, or the public.
- For some guidelines, registered stakeholders (see section 1.5) may be invited to a
- scoping workshop to talk about the key issues in the scope, and discuss any other
- aspects as needed. A workshop may be held if the referral is in a new area, there is
- 29 a new audience for NICE guidelines or a guideline topic or an area of practice has
- unique complexities. Following discussions with the developer, NICE staff with
- responsibility for quality assurance decide whether, and when, to hold a scoping

- workshop, and document the reasons for the decision. They also arrange the
- workshop.
- 3 The workshop is usually held before the consultation on the draft scope, but may be
- 4 held during or after the consultation period. Attendance is usually limited to 1 person
- 5 from each registered stakeholder organisation. In some circumstances, an
- 6 organisation can nominate more than 1 person (for example, if it represents the
- 7 views of both practitioners and people using services) if space permits.
- 8 If there are large numbers of stakeholders, it may not be practical for all registered
- 9 stakeholders to attend. NICE may specify groups or roles of stakeholders who are
- needed. The aim of the workshop is to include as wide a range of views as possible.
- People attending the workshop should bring as wide a perspective of relevant views
- 12 as possible. Attendees, including representatives of relevant service user, carer and
- community organisations, should have specific knowledge of, or experience in, the
- 14 topic area.
- 15 The scoping workshop, if held, is in addition to the formal consultation on the draft
- scope. Stakeholder organisations with representatives attending the scoping
- workshop are also encouraged to submit comments in writing as part of the scope
- consultation. Depending on the needs of stakeholder groups, virtual workshops,
- such as webinars, may be held in place of face-to-face workshops.
- 20 The scoping workshop is chaired by a senior member of NICE staff with
- responsibility for guideline quality assurance.
- 22 The objectives of the scoping workshop may include:
- obtaining feedback on the selected key issues, including any important
- 24 considerations for implementation
- identifying whether there are specific aspects of the views or experiences of
- people using services that need addressing and are not covered by existing
- 27 guidelines
- identifying contextual issues, such as national policy or areas of care in which
- there is known variation in service provision

- obtaining views on what should be included and what should be excluded (for
- 2 example, populations, settings, interventions, main outcomes)
- identifying which people using services or population subgroups should be
- 4 specified for particular consideration (if any)
- considering existing NICE recommendations and how the planned guideline
- 6 relates to them
- seeking views on the composition of the committee (see section 3.1)
- encouraging applications for committee membership.
- 9 People attending the scoping workshop are sent a draft of the scope, which is
- intended as a starting point for discussion.
- 11 At the workshop, NICE staff with responsibility for quality assurance, the developer
- and other teams provide details about:
- the scope
- the timetable and process for guideline development
- the nature of stakeholder input into the guideline (including the involvement of
- people using services, family members and carers).
- 17 For some guidelines they also explain the processes for recruiting committee
- members (see chapter 3).
- 19 This introduction is followed by a structured discussion of the key issues.
- 20 After the scoping workshop, the developer writes a summary of the discussions and
- 21 key themes that emerged. The summary includes a list of organisations represented
- 22 at the workshop. When the workshop is held before consultation on the scope, this
- 23 summary is posted on the NICE website during consultation, along with the draft of
- the scope that was refined after the scoping workshop. When the scoping workshop
- is held during consultation, the summary is posted on the NICE website with the final
- scope.
- 27 For some topics, additional meetings or specific discussions with key stakeholders
- 28 may be needed. However, this is exceptional and the reasons will be documented in
- the guideline.

- 1 If a scoping workshop has been held, the developer (with input from other teams)
- 2 considers the issues raised and refines the scope after the workshop.

3 Equality impact assessment

- 4 Before the draft scope is signed off for consultation, an equality impact assessment
- 5 is completed by the developer and the committee chair to show which equality
- 6 issues have been identified and considered during scoping, and to provide
- 7 assurance that risks of adverse impacts on equality of any exclusions from the scope
- 8 have been assessed and can be justified. The equality impact assessment is signed
- 9 off by a member of NICE staff with responsibly for quality assurance, and published
- on the NICE website with the draft scope. The assessment is updated by the
- developer and the committee chair after the scope consultation.

12 Stage 6: consulting on the draft scope

- 13 The draft scope is signed off for consultation by a senior member of NICE staff with
- responsibility for quality assurance. It is posted on the NICE website for a 2- or
- 4-week consultation, and registered stakeholders and respondents are notified. A 2-
- week consultation may be used for scopes of partial updates to guidelines.
- 17 Information and prompts to support stakeholder and respondent input are posted
- with the draft scope. The purpose of these prompts is to seek their views on key
- issues (such as whether the identified outcome measures are in line with what
- 20 matters to people with the condition or people using services) and to ask what
- should be included or excluded. NICE asks stakeholders to suggest areas where
- 22 cost savings could be achieved.
- 23 Comments are invited from registered stakeholders and respondents. In particular
- 24 circumstances, comments will also be solicited from the relevant regulatory
- organisation; for example, the Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory
- 26 Agency (MHRA), when the off-label use of medicines is likely to be considered within
- the guideline, or when advice is required on regulations related to medicines.
- 28 Registered stakeholders and respondents comment on the draft scope (and later on
- 29 the draft guideline and evidence; see section 10.1). When registering, and when
- commenting on the draft scope and draft guideline, stakeholders are asked to
- disclose whether their organisation has any direct or indirect links to, or receives or

- 1 has ever received funding from, the tobacco industry. Disclosures will be included
- with the published consultation responses.
- 3 Comments should be constructed as reasoned argument and be submitted for the
- 4 purpose of improving the draft scope. NICE reserves the right not to respond to
- 5 comments that are hostile or inappropriate.
- 6 The developer, NICE staff responsible for quality assurance and NICE's Public
- 7 Involvement Programme (see section 1.5) routinely review the list of registered
- 8 stakeholders to check whether any key organisations are missing. Registered
- 9 stakeholders are also encouraged to identify potential stakeholders who are not
- registered. When the guideline covers social care, the NICE team with responsibility
- for social care should be asked about appropriate stakeholders.

12 Stage 7: finalising the scope after consultation

13 Dealing with stakeholder comments

- 14 After consultation, the developer finalises the scope in line with the comments
- received ensuring that the scope stays in line with the referral for the guideline.
- Sometimes registered stakeholders ask for the scope of a guideline to be broadened
- 17 (for example, to include additional aspects of care and support, an additional
- population, a wider age range or an additional setting).
- 19 If the developer considers that a request to expand the scope would mean the
- 20 guideline could not be completed on schedule, this should be discussed with NICE
- 21 staff with responsibility for quality assurance. Sometimes lower-priority areas are
- removed from the scope to keep the development work manageable. This is done in
- collaboration with the lead for any related quality standards. Suggestions that are
- 24 clearly outside the original referral should not be included.
- 25 All comments from registered stakeholders, and the actions taken by the developer
- and NICE in response to each comment, are clearly documented by the developer in
- a 'scope consultation table'. This is published on the NICE website with the final
- 28 scope. The process for responding to comments from registered stakeholders should
- follow the principles described in section 10.2. Comments received from
- 30 non-registered stakeholders and individuals are reviewed by the developer and

- 1 NICE. A formal response is not given and these comments are not made available
- 2 on the NICE website.
- 3 NICE reserves the right to summarise and edit comments received during
- 4 consultations, or not to publish them at all, if we consider the comments are too long,
- 5 or publication would be unlawful or otherwise inappropriate.

6 Signing off the final scope

- 7 The final scope is signed off by a senior member of NICE staff with responsibility for
- 8 quality assurance. Once the final scope has been published no changes should be
- 9 made to it except in exceptional circumstances.
- The final scope, the scope consultation table with comments from registered
- stakeholders and responses to these comments, and the equality impact
- 12 assessment are posted on the NICE website.

2.4 Amending the final scope after publication on the NICE

14 website

13

25

- In exceptional circumstances, the final scope may need amending after it has been
- signed off and posted on the NICE website. For example, amendments may be
- 17 needed in the light of policy changes, the withdrawal of a medicine, or inclusion of a
- NICE technology appraisal in development (see section 8.1). The decision on
- whether to amend the scope is made by a senior member of NICE staff with
- 20 responsibility for quality assurance, based on advice from the committee or
- 21 developer as appropriate.
- 22 If a final scope is amended after publication, registered stakeholders are informed
- 23 and the revised scope is published on the NICE website. No further consultation on
- the scope would usually be expected.

2.5 References and further reading

- 26 Kelly MP, Stewart E, Morgan A et al. (2009) A conceptual framework for public
- 27 <u>health: NICE's emerging approach</u>. Public Health 123: e14–20
- 28 Kelly MP, Morgan A, Ellis S et al. (2010) Evidence-based public health: A review of
- the experience of the National Institute of Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) of

- 1 <u>developing public health guidance in England</u>. Social Science and Medicine 71:
- 2 1056–62
- 3 Kirkham JJ, Gorst S, Altman DG et al. (2016) Core Outcome Set–STAndards for
- 4 Reporting: The COS-STAR Statement. PLoS:
- 5 https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pmed.1002148
- 6 Kirkham JJ, Davis K, Altman DG et al. (2017) Core Outcome Set-STAndards for
- 7 Development: The COS-STAD Recommendations. PLoS:
- 8 http://journals.plos.org/plosmedicine/article?id=10.1371/journal.pmed.1002447
- 9 Pawson R (2006) Evidence-based policy: a realist perspective. London: Sage
- 10 US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2005) The guide to community
- 11 <u>preventive services: what works to promote health?</u> Atlanta: US Centers for Disease
- 12 Control and Prevention
- 13 Weiss CH (1995) Nothing as practical as good theory: exploring theory-based
- evaluation for comprehensive community initiatives for children and families. In:
- 15 Connell JP, Kubisch A, Schorr LB et al., editors New approaches to evaluating
- 16 community initiatives: concepts, methods and context. Washington DC: Aspen
- 17 Institute

18

3 Decision-making committees

2 3.1 Introduction

1

- 3 This chapter describes the different types of decision-making committees, the
- 4 training of committee members, the general principles of committee meetings and
- 5 how committees make group decisions.
- 6 A decision-making committee (either a standing committee or a topic-specific
- 7 committee) draws on its expertise to develop recommendations in the areas defined
- 8 by the guideline scope. Convening an effective committee is therefore one of the
- 9 most important stages in producing a NICE guideline. The committee:
- may refine and agree the review questions to be addressed by the evidence
- reviews (for example, when topic-specific input is needed to further define
- outcomes or specify appropriate comparators) as defined in the scope
- may advise on developing the review protocol and alternative analyses
- 14 considers the evidence
- develops the recommendations for practice and research
- considers the likely costs and savings associated with implementing the
- 17 recommendations
- considers factors that may help or hinder implementation ('levers and barriers')
- advises on implementation support that may be needed.
- 20 Therefore the committee needs to be multidisciplinary and include:
- practitioners (specialists and generalists, and/or academics from the public,
- 22 private or voluntary sectors, or other independent providers of care and support,
- 23 or services)
- lay members (people using services, family members and carers, and members of
- 25 the public and community or voluntary sector with relevant experience).
- 26 Committee members are selected for their knowledge and experience, and do not
- 27 represent their organisation(s). Lay members should be willing to reflect the
- 28 experiences of a wide range of people affected by the guideline rather than basing

- their views solely on personal experience. All committee members are independent
- 2 of NICE.
- 3 In most cases, organisations with a direct commercial interest in interventions or
- 4 services are not represented on the committee because of potential conflicts of
- 5 interest, but they contribute to guideline development as registered stakeholders.
- 6 However, there may be situations in which members of such organisations are
- 7 included to ensure that this perspective is represented. For example, when
- 8 guidelines are likely to cover systems and processes relevant to the pharmaceutical
- 9 or medical devices industries, the committee may include members of the
- 10 Association of the British Pharmaceutical Association (ABPI).
- The exact composition of the committee is tailored to the guideline topic and is
- agreed by the developer and NICE staff with a role in guideline quality assurance.
- 13 Developers should ensure that all committees can comprehensively consider mental
- 14 health aspects of guideline topics (Royal College of Psychiatrists 2013). Members
- with expertise in service transformation, change management or implementation
- science are recruited if needed to support the committee in considering
- implementation issues throughout guideline development.
- For some guideline topics, it may be important for the committee to include other
- 19 types of expert (for example, an epidemiologist, researcher, statistician or economist
- with specialist knowledge). Members with experience of integrating delivery of
- services across service areas may also be recruited, particularly where the
- development of a guideline requires more flexibility than conventional organisational
- boundaries permit. If the guideline contains recommendations about services,
- committee members with a commissioning or provider background are needed, in
- 25 addition to members from relevant professional or practitioner networks or local
- 26 authorities.
- 27 When several related guidelines are being developed at the same, some committee
- members may be asked to sit on more than one committee, depending on expertise.
- 29 As far as possible, the committee should aim for diversity in membership, an
- objective of NICE's equality policy. Equality and anti-discrimination considerations
- are reflected at every stage of recruitment.

- 1 Ideally, committee members have experience of the UK healthcare setting and are
- 2 drawn from different parts of England. But this depends on the expertise available
- and does not exclude people from other countries in the UK.
- 4 All committee members, including practitioner, provider, commissioner and lay
- 5 members, have equal status, acknowledging the importance of the expertise and
- 6 experience that each member brings to the committee.
- 7 The committee may also be supported by co-opted members who are invited to
- 8 contribute to formulating recommendations in a specific part of the guideline only.
- 9 They take part fully in discussions, but do not have voting rights or count towards
- 10 quorum.

13

- 11 Expert witnesses may also be invited to some committee meetings to provide
- 12 additional evidence (see section 3.5).

3.2 Forming the committee

- 14 The committee can be formed in 2 ways:
- from members of a NICE standing committee, with additional recruitment of topic
- 16 expert members
- from multidisciplinary recruitment of all committee members (topic-specific
- 18 committee).
- 19 The resulting committee should, as far as practically possible, reflect the range of
- 20 stakeholders and groups whose activities, services or care will be covered by the
- guideline. The type of committee chosen is likely to reflect the nature of the work.
- 22 For all guidelines covering children and young people and those focusing on people
- with a learning disability or cognitive impairment, the developer should consider how
- 24 to involve people affected by the guideline when they begin work on the topic, and
- 25 should reflect this in its plans. NICE's Public Involvement Programme can advise on
- options and methods for involving people affected by the guideline. They can target
- 27 adverts for committee members to specific groups and signpost to sources of
- specialist advice. (See appendix B and the section on involving children and young

- 1 people in NICE's <u>patient and public involvement policy</u>.) They will work with the
- 2 developer on tailored support where this is needed.
- 3 For some topics it may be possible to recruit young people aged over 16 or people
- 4 with learning disability as members of the committee, or as co-opted members or
- 5 topic experts. With specialist support and reasonable adjustments, a developer has
- 6 successfully included people with learning disabilities as committee members for
- 7 NICE guidelines on improving care for this population. This was achieved through
- 8 specialist support and adjustments to the process to enable their full and equal
- 9 involvement.
- When it is not possible to recruit people affected by the guideline as lay committee
- members (for example, when the guideline covers children), other approaches are
- 12 needed to ensure that their views and experiences are incorporated. Depending on
- the review questions, the evidence base, and the age of people affected by the
- guideline, these might include working with an external agency to obtain expert
- testimony or user views on specific questions, or consulting with a reference group of
- people using services, at key stages of guideline development. For example, for the
- 17 guideline on child abuse and neglect, the developer commissioned the independent
- charity Against Violence and Abuse (AVA) to recruit and facilitate an expert
- 19 reference group of young people as a subgroup of the committee (see <u>summary</u>
- 20 report). Another approach could involve a targeted consultation with people affected
- by the guideline to fill evidence gaps or to fine-tune selected draft recommendations
- 22 (see section 10.1_and appendix B).
- 23 If other approaches to engaging people affected by the guideline are needed, the
- developer should document the reasons, together with a proposal for the work,
- including possible methods to be used, and the anticipated costs and time. The
- proposal should be discussed and agreed with members of NICE staff with a quality
- assurance role, and approved by the centre director. Where the work is approved,
- the reasons for the approach and methods should be documented in the guideline.
- 29 All committee members are recruited in accordance with NICE's policy and
- 30 procedure for recruitment and selection to advisory bodies and topic expert groups.
- Positions are advertised on the NICE website and other appropriate places (for

- 1 example, NICE Twitter, social media and websites of stakeholders, Royal Colleges
- 2 and professional organisations), and relevant stakeholders are notified. Candidates
- 3 are required to submit a declaration of interests, curriculum vitae (CV) and covering
- 4 letter, or application form in the case of lay members.

5 The committee chair

- 6 The chair guides the committee in terms of task (developing the guideline, focusing
- on any referral, the scope and timescale) and process (how the group works). The
- 8 chair helps the committee to work collaboratively, ensures a balanced contribution
- 9 from all committee members, and is mindful that some members may need support
- to ensure full participation.
- 11 The chair is appointed for their expertise and skill in chairing groups, and although
- they may have some knowledge of the topic, this is not their primary role in the
- group. Specialist knowledge is provided by other committee members, including in
- some cases a topic adviser (see <u>section 3.4</u>).
- 15 The chair ensures adherence to NICE's equality policy and that the committee takes
- account of NICE's principles on social value judgements (see the entry on social
- value judgements in our glossary). The chair and a senior member of the developer's
- team consider any potential conflicts of interest of committee members. The chair
- 19 also ensures that the guideline recommendations reflect the evidence and the
- committee's considerations. The chair should ideally be appointed before guideline
- scoping and may contribute to early development of the scope. NICE has some
- 22 standing chairs who may be appointed to chair more than 1 topic-specific committee
- 23 (see section 3.4). More details on the role of the chair can be found in the Terms of
- 24 Reference and Standing Orders (see appendix D).

3.3 Standing committees

- NICE has multiple standing committees in operation at any one time. Some guideline
- topics are allocated to a standing committee before scoping.
- 28 Standing committees usually include between 12 and 18 members (both practitioner
- and lay members). The size of the committee depends on the complexity and
- 30 breadth of the guideline. Some members are generalists (core members) and some

- 1 have specialist expertise (topic expert members). Each standing committee consists
- 2 of:
- 3 a chair
- 4 core members
- topic expert members.
- 6 Additional members with specialist knowledge may also be co-opted to the
- 7 committee for 1 or more meetings to contribute to formulating recommendations in a
- 8 specific part of the guideline.
- 9 More details on the role of committee members can be found in the Terms of
- 10 Reference and Standing Orders (see appendix D).

11 Core members of standing committees

- 12 The number of core members of a standing committee depends on the complexity
- and breadth of the guideline programme, but is usually between 6 and 12. This
- 14 number allows members to contribute effectively to discussions while including a
- broad range of experience and knowledge. Core members should include at least 1
- 16 practitioner member.
- 17 Some core members will have experience of commissioning or implementing
- interventions, services or care at regional and local levels. Others will have specific
- 19 expertise in assessing the quality of the evidence presented to the committee, and in
- its interpretation.
- 21 Core members should include at least 1 lay member. Lay members help ensure that
- 22 the committee's recommendations are relevant to specific groups or to the general
- 23 public. They also help to identify where the recommendations should acknowledge
- 24 general or specific preferences and choice by people using services, family
- 25 members and carers, or members of the wider public.
- 26 Core members of a standing committee are appointed to a single committee for a
- 27 3-year term in the first instance. All members are eligible for re-appointment after
- 28 3 years.

Topic expert members of standing committees

- When a new guideline is allocated to a standing committee, the core members of the
- 3 committee are complemented by topic expert members. They have specialist
- 4 knowledge of the topic and may include providers, commissioners and practitioners,
- 5 and should include at least 1 lay member. The lay member either has direct
- 6 experience of the topic or is a member of a relevant organisation or support group.
- 7 The number of topic expert members varies but should be no more than half of the
- 8 total number of committee members.

1

- 9 Topic expert members are usually recruited for a specific guideline, but may be
- appointed for up to 3 years, at the discretion of NICE, so that they can work on
- subsequent related guidelines. This might mean they move between standing
- committees during their term, depending on the guidelines being produced. All
- members are eligible for reappointment after 3 years.
- 14 The process of appointing topic expert members is completed at least 6 weeks
- before the first committee meeting for the guideline and takes into account the final
- scope of the guideline. Topic expert members are full members of the committee,
- with voting rights. They join in discussions, contribute to the formulation of
- recommendations and count towards the quorum.

19 **3.4 Topic-specific committees**

- 20 Usually the chair and members of a topic-specific committee are appointed for the
- 21 development of a particular guideline. But NICE does have some standing chairs
- who may be appointed to chair more than 1 topic-specific committee. The chair, the
- 23 topic adviser (if there is one) and possibly 1 or 2 other committee members are likely
- to be appointed before guideline scoping and contribute to the development of the
- 25 scope (see chapter 2).
- The final composition of a topic-specific committee is agreed by the developer and
- 27 NICE staff with a role in guideline quality assurance and takes into account the final
- scope for the guideline. The committee usually comprises between 13 and 15
- 29 members. This number allows members to contribute effectively to discussions while
- including a broad range of experience and knowledge. Occasionally when the topic

- is very broad, a larger committee may be convened. A topic-specific committee is
- 2 made up of:
- 3 a chair
- a topic adviser (not all topic-specific committees have topic advisers)
- practitioner and professional members, providers and commissioners
- at least 2 lay members (people using services, family members and carers, and
- 7 members of the public, community or voluntary sector with relevant experience);
- 8 examples of topics where there may be more than 2 lay members include topics
- 9 where personalisation and choice are particularly important, and topics covering
- all age groups.
- Additional members with specialist knowledge may also be co-opted to the
- committee for 1 or more meetings to contribute to formulating recommendations in a
- specific part of the guideline.

14 The topic adviser of a topic-specific committee

- 15 A topic adviser with specialist knowledge may be appointed to a topic-specific
- 16 committee (for example, when the committee chair does not have topic expertise).
- 17 The topic adviser is a member of the committee but also supports the developer. The
- topic adviser contributes to the development of the scope (see chapter 2) and is
- 19 therefore appointed before scoping work starts.
- 20 The topic adviser's exact responsibilities depend on the guideline and the expert
- input needed. Responsibilities may include working with the systematic reviewer on
- 22 the evidence reviews (if topic-specific knowledge is needed), or checking the
- 23 guideline to ensure that the terminology and language are correct.

24 Practitioner and professional members of topic-specific committees

- 25 Practitioner and professional members of a topic-specific committee may be
- recruited before the scope is finalised (see section 2.2). They should reflect the
- views and experiences of practitioners, professionals, providers and commissioners
- working in the area covered by the guideline.
- 29 Practitioner and professional committee members have appropriate knowledge and
- skills; detailed research expertise is not necessary, although an understanding of

- 1 evidence-based practice is essential and some experience of service transformation
- 2 or delivering integrated services across boundaries is desirable. Practitioner and
- 3 professional members contribute their own views to the committee and do not
- 4 represent the views of their professional organisations.
- 5 A topic-specific committee usually includes between 9 and 11 practitioner or
- 6 professional members (occasionally when the topic is very broad, more members
- 7 may be recruited). The spread of interest and experience of practitioner and
- 8 professional members is agreed between the developer and members of NICE staff
- 9 with responsibility for guideline quality assurance.

10 Lay members of topic-specific committees

- All committees have at least 2 lay members with experience or knowledge of issues
- that are important to people using services, family members and carers, and the
- community affected by the guideline. This helps to ensure that the guideline is
- relevant to people affected by the recommendations and acknowledges general or
- 15 specific preferences and choice.
- Lay members usually have direct experience of the condition, services or topic being
- 17 covered by the guideline as a patient, service user, carer or family member, or as a
- member or an officer of a lay stakeholder organisation or support group. However,
- they do not represent the views of any particular organisation.

20 3.5 Other attendees at committee meetings

21 Expert witnesses

- 22 If the committee does not have sufficient evidence to make recommendations in a
- particular area (for example, if there are gaps in the evidence base or subgroups are
- under-represented), it may call on external experts (expert witnesses) who can
- 25 provide additional evidence from their experience and specific expertise, to help the
- committee to consider and interpret the evidence.
- 27 Once the committee has established that it needs evidence in a particular area from
- 28 an expert witness, committee members and NICE's Public Involvement Programme
- are asked by the developer to nominate experts who might fulfil this role. Expert
- witnesses may also be identified by the developer or NICE staff with a quality
- assurance role, or if required, by active recruitment through stakeholder

- organisations and the NICE website. Experts may be drawn from a wide range of
- 2 areas as appropriate, including government and policy, research, practice, people
- 3 using services and carers, or the community and voluntary sector.
- 4 Before seeking expert testimony from children or other vulnerable groups, careful
- 5 consideration should be given to the ethics and implications of the involvement.
- 6 Adjustments and additional support may be needed, such as giving testimony via
- 7 video recording, or in private session. There is no minimum age for young people
- 8 providing expert testimony. If a child or young person attends a committee meeting,
- 9 they must be accompanied by their parent, carer or other appropriate adult with
- responsibility for their welfare (see appendix on safeguarding in NICE's patient and
- 11 public involvement policy).
- 12 Expert witnesses attending a committee meeting are invited to answer questions
- from members of the committee. They may be invited to present their evidence at a
- committee meeting in the form of expert testimony based on a written paper. The
- written expert testimony paper may be shared with the committee before the meeting
- or the paper may be submitted by the expert after the meeting. Sometimes the
- developer writes up the expert testimony and agrees this with the witness after the
- meeting. Expert testimony papers are posted on the NICE website with other
- sources of evidence when the guideline is published.
- 20 Expert witnesses are not members of the committee; they do not have voting rights,
- and they should not be involved in the final decisions or influence the wording of
- 22 recommendations.

Committee support roles

- The Committee is assisted by a range of people, who have a role in:
- quality assurance
- development
- support.

- 28 These are technical and project management staff from the developer and/or NICE
- 29 staff with a quality assurance role. Other NICE staff (such as editors and members of

- the NICE resource impact assessment team) also attend some meetings. They are
- 2 not committee members and do not have voting rights at committee meetings.

3 Public access to meetings

- 4 Enabling <u>public access to advisory body meetings</u> is part of NICE's commitment to
- 5 openness and transparency. It enables stakeholders and the public to better
- 6 understand how evidence is assessed and interpreted, how consultation comments
- 7 are taken into account and how recommendations are formulated. Logistic and
- 8 resulting financial pressures prevent NICE from enabling public access to all
- 9 guideline committee meetings. Standing committee meetings are usually held in
- public; topic-specific committee meetings are held in private. Public access to
- standing committee meetings is arranged according to the NICE policy (see
- 12 appendix D).
- 13 To promote public access to standing committee meetings, NICE publishes a notice
- with a draft agenda, alongside details of how the meeting can be accessed, on its
- website in advance of the meeting.
- Standing committee meetings may be held entirely in public or split into 2 parts: part
- 17 1 with the public having access and part 2 (a closed session) with no public access.
- A closed session may be needed if, for example, expert evidence involves the
- disclosure of a person's health problems, or the consideration of national policy that
- 20 has not been agreed by ministers, or if the drafting of recommendations might affect
- commercial interests. On rare occasions a standing committee meeting may be
- 22 entirely closed. The decision to hold a closed session is made by the committee
- chair and the NICE centre director responsible for the guideline.

3.6 Code of conduct and declaration of interests

25 **Declaring interests**

- 26 All committee members and anyone who has direct input into the guideline (including
- the developer and expert witnesses) must declare any potential conflicts of interest
- in line with NICE's code of practice for declaring and dealing with conflicts of interest.
- 29 For committee members, this happens on application for committee membership.
- Any relevant interests, or changes to interests, should also be declared publicly at
- the start of each committee meeting. Before each meeting, any potential conflicts of

- interest are considered by the committee chair and a senior member of the
- 2 developer's team. Any decisions to exclude a person from all or part of a meeting
- 3 should be documented. Any changes to a member's declaration of interests should
- 4 be recorded in the minutes of the meeting. Declarations of interests are published
- 5 with the final guideline.

6 Code of conduct and confidentiality

- 7 NICE has developed a code of conduct (appendix E) for committee members, which
- 8 sets out the responsibilities of NICE and the committee, and the principles of
- 9 transparency and confidentiality.
- 10 Everyone who sees documents containing confidential information or who is party to
- part 2 (closed session) discussions about a guideline before public consultation must
- sign a confidentiality agreement before becoming involved.
- 13 If committee members are asked by external parties including stakeholders, their
- professional organisation or the media to provide information about the work of the
- committee, they should contact the developer for advice.

16 Terms of Reference for committees

- Details of the role of committee members, and the procedural rules for managing the
- work of committees, can be found in the Terms of Reference and Standing Orders
- 19 for Committees (see appendix D).
- 20 All committee members should be committed to developing NICE guidelines
- 21 according to NICE's methods and processes, and to working within NICE's equality
- 22 policy.
- New members, with the exception of co-opted members, should not usually be
- 24 added to the committee after the first meeting, because this may disturb the group
- 25 dynamic. However, when a resignation leaves a gap in experience and expertise,
- 26 recruitment of new members is considered.

3.7 Identifying and meeting training needs of committee

2 *members*

3 Induction

- 4 All committee members, including topic expert members and co-opted members,
- 5 receive an induction from NICE and/or the developer covering:
- key principles for developing NICE guidelines
- the process of developing NICE guidelines, including the importance of being
- 8 familiar with relevant chapters of this manual
- how the elements of the guideline development process fit together, and the
- relationship to quality standards and products supporting implementation
- the role of the committee, including Terms of Reference and Standing Orders (see
- appendix D), and how lay members contribute
- the role of the developer and NICE teams
- formulating review questions
- 15 reviewing evidence
- the basics of how economics are used in decision-making
- developing and wording recommendations
- how guidelines are presented on the NICE website (including NICE Pathways)
- information about resource impact and how this is considered alongside the
- 20 economic evidence
- information about implementation
- NICE's social value judgements (see the entry on social value judgements in our
- 23 glossary) and equality policy
- declaration of interests.
- 25 The induction may be scheduled on appointment of the member, or during an early
- committee meeting. To work effectively, committee members may need training and
- 27 support in some technical areas of guideline development, such as systematic
- reviewing and economics. Such sessions are arranged by NICE or the developer, as
- 29 required. Before beginning their work in a committee, members may also be invited
- 30 to observe a meeting of another committee.

- 1 All committee members are encouraged to provide information to NICE staff about
- 2 any needs they have for additional support to enable them to participate fully in the
- work of the committee.

4 Training for the committee chair

- 5 The person selected to perform the role of committee chair may need support and
- 6 training so that they can carry out their role effectively. The chair needs in-depth
- 7 knowledge of the NICE guideline development process and an understanding of
- 8 group processes. Anyone appointed as a committee chair is required to attend the
- 9 chairs' induction session provided by NICE, which in addition to the above covers the
- 10 key tasks that the chair is expected to perform, including:
- facilitating meetings so that all committee members are involved
- ensuring that lay members of the committee can contribute to discussions
- ensuring that people requiring adjustments who are members (including topic
- expert, co-opted or lay members) can contribute to discussions
- declaring interests and dealing with conflicts of interest
- planning and organising the work of the committee, including how the evidence is
- 17 considered, consensus approaches and developing recommendations.
- In addition to the specific induction session, the developer should identify and meet
- any additional training needs of a committee chair. The developer may consider a
- 20 'buddying' approach in which a new committee chair learns from someone with
- 21 previous experience.

22 Training for lay members

- 23 Lay members of the committee are offered training by NICE's Public Involvement
- 24 Programme. This is in addition to the induction and any training they receive
- 25 alongside other members of the committee, and allows specific questions and needs
- to be addressed on topics such as:
- the role of economics in guideline development
- critical appraisal of evidence
- developing recommendations from evidence.

- 1 The training also advises lay members about effective participation in guideline
- 2 development and gives them the opportunity to learn from people who have had a
- 3 lay role on previous committees.

4 3.8 Committee meetings

5 **General principles**

- 6 The committee is multidisciplinary and its members bring with them different beliefs,
- 7 values and experience. All these perspectives are valued by NICE and should be
- 8 considered. Each member should have an equal opportunity to contribute to the
- 9 development of the guideline, and should receive any additional support they need to
- do this. For this reason, it is important for the chair to check that the terminology
- used is understood by all committee members and is clarified if needed. The chair
- should ensure that there is sufficient discussion to allow a range of possible
- approaches to be considered, while keeping the group focused on the guideline
- scope, the evidence being reviewed, and the timescale of the project.

15 Meeting documentation

- Meeting documentation is usually sent to committee members to arrive at least
- 17 5 working days before a committee meeting.
- 18 The developer takes formal minutes during committee meetings and these are
- reviewed and approved at the next meeting. The approved minutes of each meeting
- are posted on the NICE website during guideline development. The information
- 21 includes:
- where the meeting took place
- who attended
- apologies for absence
- declarations of interests of those attending, including actions and decisions made
- about any conflicts of interest
- a list of the subjects discussed
- date, time and venue of the next meeting.

1 Meeting schedule

- 2 The number of committee meetings depends on the size and scope of the topic.
- 3 There are usually between 2 and 15 meetings for each topic; most are 1-day
- 4 meetings, but some may take place over 2 days.

5 Initial meetings

- 6 During the initial meeting(s), it may be helpful to establish a framework that clarifies
- 7 the objectives of the committee, the specific tasks that need to be carried out and the
- 8 timetable. This allows the group to focus on the task and to develop a working
- 9 relationship that is structured and well defined.
- 10 Initial meetings may be used to consider the background to the guideline, the scope,
- and plans for the evidence reviews and any economic analysis that is needed. Drafts
- or completed evidence reviews may be included in initial meetings if they are
- available. At initial meetings of standing committees, topic expert members may be
- invited to give presentations on their area of work, practice or experience, to
- 15 familiarise core committee members with key topic issues.
- 16 If review questions and protocols are still in development, the evidence review team
- presents their plans for the evidence reviews (draft review protocols) to the
- committee for comment (chapter 4 describes the process of developing review
- 19 questions). The committee is asked whether the planned evidence reviews and
- 20 economic analysis are likely to answer the review questions. Committee members
- 21 are asked to suggest any amendments or improvements (for example, to further
- 22 define outcomes or specify appropriate comparators).
- 23 During initial meetings, the committee may also be asked to discuss the
- 24 development plans and to suggest areas that might benefit from expert testimony.
- 25 The committee may be asked to suggest people who can provide that testimony and
- 26 discuss and consider evidence.
- 27 For some topics, the committee may also be asked to discuss options or plans for
- involving groups who may not be part of the decision-making process (for example,
- children and young people or people with a cognitive impairment; see <u>section 3.2</u>).

- 1 The outline of the NICE pathway (see section 2.3) will be updated throughout
- 2 development in collaboration with the committee.

3 **Development meetings**

- 4 Evidence reviews and economic analyses are presented to the committee over the
- 5 course of a defined number of meetings. The committee considers the evidence
- 6 review for each review question, any economic analyses and any additional
- 7 evidence (for example, expert testimony, views of service users from a reference
- 8 group, information from focus groups or other exceptional consultation activity). It
- 9 discusses how these answer the review questions and summarises each area of
- evidence. To facilitate guideline development, the committee may work in smaller
- subgroups whose proposals are then agreed by the whole committee.
- 12 The committee also discusses the wording of any draft recommendations (see
- chapter 9). The discussion and rationale for the recommendations is recorded.
- NICE staff (for example, the lead editor, public involvement lead and media relations
- lead for the guideline and members of the resource impact assessment team) may
- give presentations and/or provide information to explain their roles to the committee.
- 17 Committee members may be asked to volunteer to work with NICE on the following:
- the NICE Pathway, which brings together everything NICE says on a topic in an
- interactive flowchart
- activities and tools that support implementation of the guideline (see chapter 12)
- promoting the guideline (see chapter 11).
- developing content for the information for the public section on the topic webpage,
- including the guideline's key messages

24 Final meetings

- 25 Towards the end of guideline development, the committee discusses and agrees the
- final wording of the draft guideline for consultation, including the draft
- 27 recommendations (see chapter 9).
- 28 After consultation the committee discusses the comments received during
- 29 consultation, any changes needed to the guideline, and agrees the final wording of
- the recommendations (see chapter 11).

1 Record-keeping

- 2 The developer should maintain records throughout guideline development and
- 3 ensure that record-keeping standards are appropriate for audit. The following
- 4 information should be readily available if requested by NICE staff with a quality
- 5 assurance role:
- details of the committee members, including declarations of interest
- details of the search strategies, including when the most recent searches were
- 8 conducted
- details of the draft recommendations and the rationales for the recommendations
- details of the included and excluded studies and associated review protocols
- data-extraction forms
- evidence tables and draft evidence reviews
- details of the economic analysis, including any working models
- minutes of committee meetings
- any additional information presented to the committee (for example, expert
- testimony papers, presentations, examples of practice).

3.9 Making group decisions and reaching consensus

18 Reaching agreement

- 19 Committee members need to make collective decisions throughout guideline
- development. This can include agreeing the review questions (see chapter 4) and
- 21 protocols (see section 4.5), interpreting the evidence to answer these questions (see
- chapters 6 and 7) and developing recommendations (see chapter 9).
- 23 There are many different approaches to making group decisions, and there are no
- rules that set out which approach should be used in which circumstances. Also,
- because committees work in different ways to reflect their individual membership, it
- is difficult to be prescriptive about the approach that should be used. In most cases,
- the committee reaches decisions through a process of informal consensus. In all
- cases the approach used should be documented.
- 29 The role of the committee chair in reaching consensus is to ensure that:
- everyone on the committee, including lay members, can present their views

- assumptions can be debated
- discussions are open and constructive.
- 3 The chair needs to allow sufficient time for all committee members to express their
- 4 views without feeling intimidated or threatened, and should check that all of them
- 5 agree to endorse any recommendations. If the committee cannot come to consensus
- 6 in a particular area, the reasons for this should be documented, and the wording of
- 7 the recommendation reflect any underlying uncertainty (see chapter 9).

8 Formal consensus within the group

- 9 In exceptional circumstances, some committees may choose to use formal voting
- procedures or formal consensus methods for certain decisions (for example, when
- members disagree or when there is no evidence; see appendix D). NICE does not
- offer advice on which of the many methods might be used. However, the methods for
- achieving consensus should be recorded in the minutes of the meeting and a clear
- statement made about the factors that have been considered. This should also be
- documented in the guideline methods, ensuring the process is as transparent as
- possible.
- 17 The views of all committee members should be considered, irrespective of the
- 18 method used to reach consensus.

19 Formal consensus outside the group

- 20 Exceptionally, the committee may wish to identify wider views on best practice (for
- 21 example, if the literature search has found no evidence that addresses the review
- 22 question) by using formal consensus methods (for example, the Delphi technique or
- the nominal-group technique) outside of the group. The use of these methods and
- 24 the constituency of the wider group should be discussed on a case-by-case basis
- with members of NICE staff with responsibility for guideline quality assurance, and
- the NICE Public Involvement Programme lead. The final decision on whether these
- 27 methods are warranted is made by NICE staff with responsibility for quality
- assurance. If it is decided that such methods may be used, the planning and
- 29 methods will be clearly documented and the methods described in the guideline. In
- all cases the approach used should be documented.

1 3.10 Further contributions of committee members

- 2 Some committee members may be invited to apply to join the Quality Standards
- 3 Advisory Committee that is developing a quality standard related to the guideline.
- 4 Some members may also be invited to contribute to a future review of the guideline
- 5 and a check of the need for an update.

6 3.11 References and further reading

- 7 Choudhry NK, Stelfox HT, Desky AS (2002) Relationships between authors of
- 8 clinical practice guidelines and the pharmaceutical industry. Journal of the American
- 9 Medical Association 287: 612–7
- 10 Eccles M, Grimshaw J, editors (2000) Clinical guidelines from conception to use.
- 11 Abingdon: Radcliffe Medical Press
- 12 Elwyn G, Greenhalgh T, Macfarlane F (2001) Groups: a guide to small groups. In:
- Healthcare, management, education and research. Abingdon: Radcliffe Medical
- 14 Press
- Hutchinson A, Baker R (1999) Making use of guidelines in clinical practice.
- 16 Abingdon: Radcliffe Medical Press
- 17 Kelly MP, Moore TA (2012) The judgement process in evidence-based medicine and
- health technology assessment. Social Theory and Health 10: 1–19

4 Developing review questions and planning the

2 evidence review

- 3 At the start of guideline development, the key issues and draft questions listed in the
- 4 scope should be translated into review questions and review protocols.
- 5 Review guestions define the boundaries of the review and therefore must be clear
- 6 and focused. They provide the framework for the design of the literature searches,
- 7 inform the planning and process of the evidence review, and act as a guide for the
- 8 development of recommendations by the committee.
- 9 This chapter describes how review questions are developed and agreed. It describes
- the different types of review question and provides examples. It also provides
- information on the different types of evidence and how to plan the evidence review.
- 12 The best approach may vary depending on the topic. Options should be considered
- by the developer, and the chosen approach discussed and agreed with NICE staff
- with responsibility for quality assurance. The approach should be documented in the
- review protocol (see <u>table 4.1</u>) and the guideline, together with the reasons for the
- 16 choice.

1

17 **4.1 Number of review questions**

- 18 The number of review questions for each guideline depends on the topic and the
- 19 breadth of the scope. However, it is important that the total number of review
- 20 questions:
- provides sufficient focus for the guideline, and covers all key areas outlined in the
- 22 scope
- can be covered in the time and with the resources available.
- 24 Review guestions can vary considerably in terms of both the number of included
- 25 studies and the complexity of the question and analyses. For example, a single
- review guestion might involve a complex comparison of several interventions with
- 27 many primary studies included. At the other extreme, a review question might
- investigate the effects of a single intervention compared with a single comparator
- 29 and there may be few primary studies or no study meeting the inclusion criteria. The

- 1 number of review questions for each guideline will therefore vary depending on the
- 2 topic and its complexity.

3 4.2 Developing review questions from the scope

- 4 The review questions should cover all key areas specified in the scope but should
- 5 not introduce new areas. They will often build on the draft questions in the scope and
- 6 usually contain more detail.
- 7 Review questions are usually drafted by the developer. They are then refined and
- 8 agreed with the committee members. This enables the literature search to be
- 9 planned efficiently. Sometimes the questions need refining once the evidence has
- been searched; such changes to review questions (with reasons) should be agreed
- with a member of NICE staff with a quality assurance role, and documented in the
- 12 review protocol and evidence review.

13

4.3 Formulating and structuring different review questions

- 14 When developing review questions, it is important to consider what information is
- 15 needed for any planned economic modelling. This might include information about
- quality-of-life, rates of, and inequalities in, adverse effects and use of health and
- social care services. In addition, review questions often cover acceptability and
- accessibility of interventions, and experiences of practitioners or people using
- services and the public. The nature and type of review questions determines the type
- of evidence that is most suitable (Petticrew and Roberts 2003).
- 21 Review questions should be clear and focused. The exact structure of each question
- depends on what is being asked. The aims of questions will differ, but are likely to
- cover at least one of the following:
- extent and nature of the issue as described in the scope
- factors, causal mechanisms and the role of the various vectors
- interventions that work best in ideal circumstances and might work in specific
- circumstances or settings (the extent to which something works, how and why)
- technologies or tests that work best to diagnose certain diseases or conditions
- a relevant programme theory, theory of change, or mechanisms of action likely to
- 30 explain behaviour or effects

- views and experiences of people using services or people who may be affected by
- the recommendation, including how acceptable and accessible they find the
- intervention, and whether there might be differences in people's values and
- 4 preferences that might affect uptake of a recommended intervention
- practitioners' or providers' views, experiences and working practices (including
- 6 any factors hindering the implementation of the intervention and factors supporting
- 7 implementation)
- e costs and resource use
- potential for an intervention to do harm or have unintended consequences.
- 10 If a conceptual framework or logic models are developed, they can be useful when
- developing review questions.
- 12 There are examples of different types of review questions and the type of evidence
- that might best address them throughout this chapter. NICE is currently exploring the
- impact that evidence generated from real world data, and the use of big data
- analytics, could have on the way we develop and update guidelines and the methods
- we use. This is a rapidly evolving area, and suggestions from guideline developers,
- 17 academics and other stakeholders are encouraged during consultation regarding
- 18 how and when these approaches should be used.
- 19 Review questions about the effectiveness of an intervention
- 20 A helpful structured approach for developing questions about interventions is the
- 21 PICO (population, intervention, comparator and outcome) framework (see box 4.1).
- However, other frameworks exist (such as SPICE; setting, perspective, intervention,
- comparison, evaluation) and can be used as appropriate.
- 24 Box 4.1 Formulating a review question on the effectiveness of an intervention
- 25 using the PICO framework

Population: Which population are we interested in? How best can it be described? Are there subgroups that need to be considered?

Intervention: Which intervention, treatment or approach should be examined?

Comparators: Are there alternative(s) to the intervention being examined? If so, what are these (for example, other interventions, standard active comparators, usual care or placebo)?

Outcome: Which outcomes should be considered to assess how well the intervention is working? What is really important for people using services? Core outcome sets should be used if suitable based on quality and validity; one source is the COMET database. The Core Outcome Set Standards for Development (COS-STAD) and Core Outcome Set Standards for Reporting (COS-STAR) should be used to assess the suitability of identified core outcome sets.

- 2 For each review question, factors that may affect the outcomes and effectiveness of
- an intervention, including any wider social factors that may affect health and any
- 4 health inequalities, should be considered. The setting for the question should also be
- 5 specified if necessary. Outcomes and other factors that are important should be pre-
- 6 specified in the review protocol. In general, a maximum of 7 to 10 outcomes should
- 7 be defined. For guidance on prioritising outcomes, please see
- 8 http://www.gradeworkinggroup.org
- 9 Box 4.2 Examples of review questions on the effectiveness of interventions

- What types of mass-media intervention help prevent children and young people from taking up smoking? Are the interventions delaying rather than preventing the onset of smoking?
- Which of the harm-reduction services offered by needle and syringe
 programmes (including advice and information on safer injecting, onsite
 vaccination services, and testing for hepatitis B and C and HIV) are effective in
 reducing blood-borne viruses and other infections among people who inject
 drugs?
- What types of intervention and programme are effective in increasing physical
 activity levels among children under 8 particularly those who are not active
 enough to meet the national recommendations for their age or help to improve
 their core physical skills?
- Does brief advice from GPs increase adult patients' physical activity levels?
- What are the most effective school-based interventions for changing young people's attitudes to alcohol use?
- For people with IBS (irritable bowel syndrome), are antimuscarinics or smooth muscle relaxants effective compared with placebo or no treatment for the long-term control of IBS symptoms? Which is the most effective antispasmodic?
- Which first-line opioid maintenance treatments are effective and cost effective in relieving pain in patients with advanced and progressive disease who require strong opioids?
- What are the most effective methods of care planning, focusing on improving outcomes for people with dementia and their carers?
- What is the effectiveness and cost effectiveness of intermediate care and reablement for people living with dementia?
- 2 Review questions about pharmacological management will usually only include
- 3 medicines with a UK marketing authorisation for some indication, based on
- 4 regulatory assessment of safety and efficacy. Use of a medicine outside its licensed
- 5 indication (off-label use) may be considered in some circumstances; for example, if
- 6 this use is common practice in the UK, if there is good evidence for this use, or there
- 7 is no other medicine licensed for the indication (see also the section on
- 8 recommendations on medicines, including off-label use of licensed medicines).

- 1 Medicines with no UK marketing authorisation for any indication will not usually be
- 2 considered in a guideline because there is no UK assessment of safety and efficacy
- 3 to support their use.
- 4 A review question about the effectiveness of an intervention is usually best answered
- 5 by a randomised controlled trial (RCT), because a well-conducted RCT is most likely
- 6 to give an unbiased estimate of effects. More information (for example, information
- 7 about long-term effects) may be obtained from other sources. Advice on finding data
- 8 on the adverse effects of an intervention is available in the Cochrane handbook for
- 9 <u>systematic reviews for interventions</u> and also the SuRe Info (Summarized Research
- 10 <u>in Information Retrieval)</u> resource (from HTAi).
- 11 RCTs provide the most valid evidence of the effects of interventions. However, such
- evidence may not always be available. In addition, for many health and social care
- interventions it can be difficult or unethical to assign populations to control and
- intervention groups (for example, for interventions which aim to change policy). In
- such cases, a non-randomised controlled trial might be a more appropriate way of
- 16 assessing association or possible cause and effect. The Medical Research Council
- 17 (MRC) has produced guidance on evaluating complex interventions (Craig et al.
- 18 2008) and using natural experiments to evaluate health interventions delivered at
- 19 population level (Craig et al. 2011).
- 20 There are also circumstances in which an RCT is not needed to confirm the
- 21 effectiveness of an intervention (for example, giving insulin to a person in a diabetic
- 22 coma compared with not giving insulin or reducing speed limits to 20 mph to reduce
- 23 the severity of injuries from road traffic accidents). In these circumstances, there is
- 24 sufficient certainty from non-RCT evidence that an important effect exists. In these
- circumstances due consideration needs to be given to the following:
- whether an adverse outcome is likely if the person is not treated (evidence from,
- for example, studies of the natural history of a condition)
- if the intervention gives a large benefit or shows a clear dose-response gradient
- that is unlikely to be a result of bias (evidence from, for example, historically
- 30 controlled studies)

- whether the side effects of the intervention are acceptable (evidence from, for
- 2 example, case series)
- if there is no alternative intervention
- if there is a convincing mechanism of action (such as a pathophysiological basis)
- 5 for the intervention.
- 6 When review questions are about the effectiveness of interventions, additional types
- 7 of evidence reviews may be needed to answer different aspects of the question. For
- 8 example, additional evidence reviews might address the views of people using
- 9 services or the communities where services are based, or barriers to use as reported
- by practitioners or providers. Sometimes, a review may use different sources of
- evidence or types of data (for example, a review may combine current practice or
- map quantitative information with qualitative data (that is, a mixed methods review).
- 13 A review on effectiveness may also include evidence of how the intervention works.
- 14 Some reviews may also use real world evidence and data.

15 Review questions that consider implementation

- Review guestions on effectiveness may also consider implementation, for example,
- 17 'What systems and processes should be in place to increase shared decision-
- 18 making?

19 Review questions that consider cost effectiveness

- 20 For more information on review questions that consider cost effectiveness, see
- chapter 7.

22 Review questions about the accuracy of diagnostic tests

- 23 Review questions about diagnosis are concerned with the performance of a
- 24 diagnostic test or test strategy. Diagnostic tests can include identification tools,
- 25 physical examination, history-taking, laboratory or pathological examination and
- imaging tests.
- 27 Broadly, review questions that can be asked about a diagnostic test are of 3 types:
- questions about the diagnostic accuracy (or diagnostic yield) of a test or a number
- of tests individually against a comparator (the reference standard)

- questions about the diagnostic accuracy (or diagnostic yield) of a test strategy
- 2 (such as serial testing) against a comparator (the reference standard)
- questions about the value of using the test.
- 4 In studies of the accuracy of a diagnostic test, the results of the test under study (the
- 5 index test[s]) are compared with those of the best available test (the reference
- 6 standard) in a sample of people. It is important to be clear when deciding on the
- 7 question what the exact proposed use of the test is (for example, as an identification
- 8 tool, an initial 'triage' test or after other tests).
- 9 The PICO framework can be useful when formulating review questions about
- diagnostic test accuracy (see box 4.3). However other frameworks (such as PPIRT;
- population, prior tests, index test, reference standard, target condition) can be used if
- 12 helpful.

13 Box 4.3 Features of a well-formulated review question on diagnostic test

14 accuracy using the PICO framework

Population: To which populations would the test be applicable? How can they be best described? Are there subgroups that need to be considered?

Index test[s]: The test or test strategy being evaluated for accuracy.

Comparator/reference standard: The test with which the index test(s) is/are being compared, usually the reference standard (the test that is considered to be the best available method for identifying the presence or absence of the condition of interest – this may not be the one that is routinely used in practice).

Target condition: The disease, disease stage or subtype of disease that the index test(s) and the reference standard are being used to identify.

Outcome: The diagnostic accuracy of the test or test strategy for detecting the target condition. This is usually reported as test parameters, such as sensitivity, specificity, predictive values, likelihood ratios, or – when multiple thresholds are used – a receiver operating characteristic (ROC) curve. This should also include issues of importance to people having the test, such as acceptability.

- 16 A review question about diagnostic test accuracy is usually best answered by a
- 17 cross-sectional study in which both the index test(s) and the reference standard are
- performed on the same sample of people. Cohort and case–control studies are also
- used to assess the accuracy of diagnostic tests, but these types of study design are
- 20 more prone to bias (and often results in inflated estimates of diagnostic test
- accuracy). Further advice on the types of study to include in reviews of diagnostic

- test accuracy can be found in the <u>Cochrane handbook for diagnostic test accuracy</u>
- 2 reviews.

3 Box 4.4 Examples of review questions on diagnostic test accuracy

What is the accuracy of imaging (MRI, CT scan, PET scan, X-ray, ultrasonography) for diagnosing osteomyelitis compared with invasive bone biopsy?

What is the accuracy of D-dimer assay for diagnosing deep vein thrombosis compared with compression ultrasonography?

In people suspected of having coronary artery disease, can multi-slice spiral CT of coronary arteries be used as replacement for conventional invasive coronary angiography?

In patients suspected of cow's milk allergy, should skin prick tests rather than an oral food challenge with cow's milk be used for diagnosis and management?

In adults receiving care for in a non-specialist settings, should serum or plasma cystatin C rather than serum creatinine concentration be used for diagnosing and managing renal impairment?

4

17

- 5 Although assessing test accuracy is important for establishing the usefulness of a
- 6 diagnostic test, the value of a test lies in how useful it is in guiding treatment
- 7 decisions or the provision of services, and ultimately in improving outcomes. 'Test
- 8 and treat' studies compare outcomes for people who have a new diagnostic test (in
- 9 combination with a management strategy) with outcomes of people who have the
- usual diagnostic test and management strategy. These types of study are not very
- common. If there is a trade-off between costs, benefits and harms of the tests, a
- decision-analytic model may be useful (see Lord et al. 2006).
- Review guestions aimed at establishing the value of a diagnostic test in practice can
- be structured in the same way as questions about interventions. The best study
- design is test-and-treat RCT. Review questions about the safety of a diagnostic test
- should be structured in the same way as questions about the safety of interventions.

Review questions about prognosis

- 18 Prognosis describes the likelihood of a particular outcome, such as disease
- progression, the development of higher levels of need, or length of survival after
- diagnosis or for a person with a particular set of risk markers. A prognosis is based
- on the characteristics of the person or user of services ('prognostic factors'). These
- 22 prognostic factors may be disease specific (such as the presence or absence of a
- particular disease feature) or demographic (such as age or sex), and may also

- include the likely response to treatment or care and the presence of comorbidities. A
- 2 prognostic factor does not need to be the cause of the outcome, but should be
- associated with (in other words, predictive of) that outcome.
- 4 Information about prognosis can be used within guidelines to:
- classify people into risk categories (for example, cardiovascular risk or level of
 need) so that different interventions can be applied
- define subgroups of populations that may respond differently to interventions
- identify factors that can be used to adjust for case mix (for example, in
- 9 investigations of heterogeneity)
- help determine longer-term outcomes not captured within the timeframe of a trial
 (for example, for use in an economic model).
- Review guestions about prognosis address the likelihood of an outcome for a person
- or user of services from a population at risk for that outcome, based on the presence
- of a proposed prognostic factor.
- Review questions about prognosis may be closely related to questions about
- aetiology (cause of a disease or need) if the outcome is viewed as the development
- of the disease or need based on a number of risk factors.

18 Box 4.5 Examples of review questions on prognosis

Are there factors related to the individual (characteristics either of the individual or of the act of self-harm) that may predict outcomes (including suicide, non-fatal repetition, other psychosocial outcomes) from self-harm?

Which people having neoadjuvant chemotherapy or chemoradiotherapy for rectal cancer do not need surgery?

- 19
- 20 A review question about prognosis is best answered using a prospective cohort
- 21 study with multi-variate analysis. Case-control studies and cross-sectional studies
- are not usually suitable for answering questions about prognosis because they do
- 23 not estimate baseline risk, but give only an estimate of the likelihood of the outcome
- 24 for people with and without the prognostic factor.

- 1 Review questions about clinical prediction models for individual prognosis or
- 2 diagnosis
- 3 Clinical prediction models are developed to help healthcare professionals estimate
- 4 the probability or risk that a specific disease or condition is present (diagnostic
- 5 prediction models) or that a specific event will occur in the future (prognostic
- 6 prediction models). These models are used to inform decision-making. They are
- 7 usually developed using a multivariable prediction model a mathematical equation
- 8 that relates multiple predictors for a particular person to the probability of or risk for
- 9 the presence (diagnosis) or future occurrence (prognosis) of a particular outcome.
- Other names for a prediction model include risk prediction model, predictive model,
- prognostic (or prediction) index or rule, and risk score.
- 12 Diagnostic prediction models can be used to inform who should be referred for
- further testing, whether treatment should be started directly, or to reassure patients
- that a serious cause for their symptoms is unlikely. Prognostic prediction models can
- be used for planning lifestyle or treatment decisions based on the risk for developing
- a particular outcome or state of health in a given period.
- 17 Studies of clinical prediction model studies can be broadly categorised into those
- that develop models, those that validate models (with or without updating the model)
- and those that do both. Studies that report model development aim to derive a
- 20 prediction model by selecting the relevant predictors and combining them statistically
- into a multi-variable model. Logistic and Cox regression are most frequently used for
- 22 short-term (for example, disease absent versus present, 30-day mortality) outcomes
- 23 and long-term (for example, 10-year risk) outcomes, respectively. Studies may also
- focus on quantifying how much value a specific predictor (for example, a new
- 25 predictor) adds to the model.
- Quantifying the predictive ability of a model using the same data from which the
- 27 model was developed (often referred to as apparent performance) tends to over-
- 28 estimate performance. Studies reporting the development of new prediction models
- 29 should always include some form of validation to quantify any optimism in the
- predicted performance (for example, calibration and discrimination). There are 2
- 31 types of validation: internal validation and external validation. Internal validation uses
- 32 only the original study sample with methods as bootstrapping or cross-validation.

- 1 External validation evaluates the performance of the model with data not used for
- 2 model development. The data may be collected by the same investigators or other
- 3 independent investigators, typically using the same predictor and outcome definitions
- 4 and measurements, but sampled from a later period (temporal or narrow validation).
- 5 If validation indicates poor performance, the model can be updated or adjusted on
- 6 the basis of the validation data set. For more information on validating prediction
- 7 models, see Steyerberg et al. 2001, 2003, 2009; Moons et al. 2012; Altman et al.
- 8 2009; and Justice et al. 1999.
- 9 Well-known clinical prediction models include QCancer, GerdQ, Ottawa Ankle Rules,
- and the Alvarado Score for diagnosis; and for prognosis, QRISK2, QFracture, FRAX,
- 11 EuroScore, Nottingham Prognostic Index, the Framingham Risk Score, and the
- 12 Simplified Acute Physiology Score.
- 13 For more information, see the <u>TRIPOD statement</u> and the <u>TRIPOD statement</u>:
- 14 Explanation and Elaboration.

15 Box 4.6 Examples of review questions on clinical prediction models

Diagnostic prediction models

Which scoring tools for signs and symptoms (including Centor and FeverPAIN) are most accurate in predicting sore throat caused by group A beta-haemolytic streptococcus (GABHS) infection in primary care?

What is the accuracy, clinical utility and cost effectiveness of clinical prediction models/tools (clinical history, cardiovascular risk factors, physical examination) in evaluating people with stable chest pain of suspected cardiac origin?

Prognostic prediction models

What risk tool best identifies people with multimorbidity who are at risk of unplanned hospital admission?

What risk tool best identifies people with type 2 diabetes who are at risk of reduced life expectancy?

Which risk assessment tools are the most accurate in predicting the risk of fragility fracture in adults with osteoporosis or previous fragility fracture?

- 17 Review questions about views and experiences of people using or providing
- 18 services, family members or carers and the public
- 19 Most review questions should ensure that views and experience of people using or
- 20 providing services, family members or carers and the public are considered when
- deciding on the type of evidence review and the type of evidence that will best inform
- the question.

- 1 In some circumstances, specific questions should be formulated about the views and
- 2 experience of people using services, family members or carers and the public. The
- 3 views and experiences of those providing services may also be relevant. These
- 4 views and experiences, which may vary for different populations, can cover a range
- 5 of dimensions, including:
- views and experiences of people using or providing services, family members or
- 7 carers or the public on the effectiveness and acceptability of given interventions
- preferences of people using services, family members or carers or the public for
- 9 different treatment or service options, including the option of foregoing treatment
- 10 or care
- views and experiences of people using or providing services, family members or
- carers or the public on what constitutes a desired, appropriate or acceptable
- outcome.
- 14 Such questions should be clear and focused, directly relevant to the topic, and
- should address experiences of an intervention or approach that are considered
- important by people using or providing services, family members or carers or the
- public. Such questions can address a range of issues, including:
- elements of care or a service that are of particular importance to people using or
- 19 providing services
- factors that encourage or discourage people from using interventions or services
- the specific needs of certain groups of people using services, including those
- sharing the characteristics protected by the Equality Act (2010)
- information and support needs specific to the topic
- which outcomes reported in studies of interventions are most important to people
- using services, family members or carers or the public.
- As for other types of review question, questions that are broad and lack focus (for
- example, 'What is the experience of living with condition X?') should be avoided.
- NICE guidelines should not reiterate or re-phrase recommendations from the NICE
- 29 guideline on patient experience in adult NHS services, the NICE guideline on service
- 30 <u>user experience in adult mental health,</u> the NICE guideline on <u>people's experience in</u>

- 1 <u>adult social care services</u>, or other NICE guidelines on the experience of people
- 2 using services. However, whether there are specific aspects of views or experiences
- 3 that need addressing for a topic should be considered during the scoping of every
- 4 guideline. Specific aspects identified during scoping should be included in the scope
- 5 if they are not covered by existing guidelines and are supported as a priority area.
- 6 These are likely to be topic specific and should be well defined and focused. The
- 7 PICo (Population, Interest, Context) framework and the SPIDER framework
- 8 (http://www.nccmt.ca/knowledge-repositories/search/191) are examples of
- 9 frameworks that can be used to structure review questions on the views or
- 10 experiences of people using or providing services, family members or carers or the
- 11 public.
- 12 Box 4.7 Examples of review questions on the views or experiences of people
- using or providing services, family members or carers or the public

What elements of care on the general ward are viewed as important by patients following their discharge from critical care areas?

How does culture affect the need for and content of information and support for bottle or breastfeeding?

What are the perceived risks and benefits of immunisation among parents, carers or young people? Is there a difference in perceived benefits and risks between groups whose children are partially immunised and those who have not been immunised?

What information and support should be offered to children with atopic eczema and their families and carers?

What are the views and experiences of health, social care and other practitioners about home-based intermediate care?

- 15 A review question about the views or experiences of people using or providing
- services, family members or carers or the public could be answered using qualitative
- studies or cross-sectional surveys (or both), although information on views and
- experiences is also becoming increasingly available as part of some intervention
- 19 studies.
- When there is a lack of evidence on issues important to people affected by the
- 21 guideline (including families and carers, where appropriate), the developer should
- 22 consider seeking information via a call for evidence (see section 5.5), or approaching
- 23 experts who may have access to additional data sources, such as surveys of user
- views and experiences, to present as expert testimony (see section 3.5).

- 1 Exceptionally, when the information gap cannot be addressed in other ways, the
- 2 developer may commission an additional consultation exercise with people affected
- 3 by the guideline to obtain their views on specific aspects of the scope or issues
- 4 raised by the committee, or to validate early draft recommendations before
- 5 consultation with registered stakeholders. (For more information, see appendix B.)
- 6 The developer should document the reasons, together with a proposal for the work,
- 7 including possible methods and the anticipated costs. The proposal should be
- 8 discussed and agreed with members of NICE staff with a quality assurance role, and
- 9 approved by the centre director. Where the work is approved, the reasons and
- methods should be documented in the guideline.

11 Review questions about service delivery

- 12 Guidelines often cover areas of service delivery. These might include how delivery of
- services could improve or what are the different core components of services and
- 14 how different components could be re-configured.

15 Box 4.8 Examples of review questions on service delivery

In people with hip fracture what is the clinical and cost effectiveness of hospital-based multidisciplinary rehabilitation on the following outcomes: functional status, length of stay in secondary care, mortality, place of residence/discharge, hospital readmission and quality of life?

What is the clinical and cost effectiveness of surgeon seniority (consultant or equivalent) in reducing the incidence of mortality, the number of people requiring reoperation, and poor outcome in terms of mobility, length of stay, wound infection and dislocation?

What types of needle and syringe programmes (including their location and opening times) are effective and cost effective?

What regional or city level commissioning models, service models, systems and service structures are effective in:

- reducing diagnostic delay for TB?
- improving TB contact tracing?
- improving TB treatment completion?

- 17 A review question about the effectiveness of service delivery models is usually best
- answered by an RCT. However, a wide variety of methodological approaches and
- 19 study designs have been used, including observational evidence (including real
- world evidence), experimental and qualitative evidence. Other types of questions on
- service delivery are also likely to be answered using evidence from study types other
- than RCTs. For example, we might want to know about how the intervention works.

- 1 Depending on the type of review questions, the PICO framework may be appropriate
- 2 but other frameworks can be used.
- When a topic includes review questions on service delivery, approaches described in
- 4 chapter 7 and appendix A may be used. Such methods should be agreed with NICE
- 5 staff with responsibility for quality assurance and should be clearly documented in
- 6 the final guideline.

7 Review questions about epidemiology

- 8 Epidemiological reviews describe the problem under investigation and can be used
- 9 to inform other review questions. For example, an epidemiological review of
- incidence or prevalence of a condition would provide baseline data for further
- evidence synthesis, an epidemiological review of accidents would provide
- information on the most common accidents, as well as morbidity and mortality
- statistics, and data on inequalities in the impact of accidents.

14 Box 4.9Examples of review questions that might benefit from an

15 epidemiological review

What are the patterns of physical activity among children from different populations and of different ages in England?

Which populations of children are least physically active and at which developmental stage are all children least physically active?

What is the incidence of Lyme disease in the UK?

- 17 The structure of the question and the type of evidence will depend on the aim of the
- 18 review.
- 19 Another use of epidemiological reviews is to describe relationships between
- 20 epidemiological factors and outcomes a review_on associations. If an
- 21 epidemiological review has been carried out, information will have been gathered
- from observational studies on the nature of the problem. However, further analysis of
- 23 this information in the form of a review on associations may be needed to
- 24 establish the epidemiological factors associated with any positive or negative
- 25 behaviours or outcomes.

1 Box 4.10 Examples of review questions that might benefit from a review on

2 associations

What factors are associated with children's or young people's physical activity and how strong are the associations?

What physiological and aetiological factors are associated with coeliac disease? What physical, environmental and sociological factors are associated with the higher prevalence of multiple sclerosis in European countries?

3

4

4.4 Evidence used to inform recommendations

- 5 In order to formulate recommendations, the guideline committee needs to consider a
- 6 range of evidence about what works generally, why it works, and what might work
- 7 (and how) in specific circumstances. The committee needs evidence from multiple
- 8 sources, extracted for different purposes and by different methods.

9 Scientific evidence

- Scientific evidence is explicit, transparent and replicable. It can be context free or
- 11 context sensitive. Context-free scientific evidence assumes that evidence can be
- independent of the observer and context. It can be derived from evidence reviews or
- meta-analyses of quantitative studies, individual studies or theoretical models.
- 14 Context-sensitive scientific evidence looks at what works and how well in real-life
- situations. It includes information on attitudes, implementation, organisational
- capacity, forecasting, economics and ethics. It is mainly derived using social science
- and behavioural research methods, including quantitative and qualitative research
- studies, surveys, theories, cost-effectiveness analyses and mapping reviews.
- 19 Sometimes, it is derived using the same techniques as context-free scientific
- 20 evidence. Context-sensitive evidence can be used to complement context-free
- 21 evidence, and can so provide the basis for more specific and practical
- 22 recommendations. It can be used to:
- supplement evidence on effectiveness (for example, to look at how factors such
- as occupation, educational attainment and income influence effectiveness)
- inform the development and refinement of logic models (see section 2.3) and
- causal pathways (for example, to explain what factors predict teenage
- 27 parenthood)

- provide information about the characteristics of the population (including social
- 2 circumstances and the physical environment) and about the process of
- 3 implementation
- describe psychological processes and behaviour change.
- 5 Quantitative studies may be the primary source of evidence to address review
- 6 questions on:
- the effectiveness of interventions or services (including information on what works,
- 8 for whom and under which circumstances)
- measures of association between factors and outcomes
- variations in delivery and implementation for different groups, populations or
- 11 settings
- resources and costs of interventions or services.
- 13 Examples of the types of review questions that are addressed using quantitative
- 14 evidence include:
- How well do different interventions work (for example, does this vary according to
- age, severity of disease)?
- What other factors affect how well an intervention works?
- How much resource does an intervention need to be delivered effectively and
- does this differ depending on location?
- 20 Scientific evidence can include both quantitative and qualitative evidence.
- 21 Sometimes, qualitative studies may be the primary source of evidence to address
- 22 review questions on:
- the experiences of people using services, family members or carers or
- practitioners (including information on what works, for whom and under which
- circumstances)
- the views of people using services, family members or carers, the public or
- 27 practitioners
- opportunities for and factors hindering improvement of services (including issues
- of access or acceptability for people using services or providers)

- variations in delivery and implementation for different groups, populations or
- 2 settings
- factors that may help or hinder implementation
- social context and the social construction and representation of health and illness
- background on context, from the point of view of users, stakeholders,
- 6 practitioners, commissioners or the public
- theories of, or reasons for, associations between interventions and outcomes.
- 8 Examples of the types of review questions that could be addressed using qualitative
- 9 evidence include:
- How do different groups of practitioners, people using services or stakeholders
- perceive the issue (for example, does this vary according to profession, age,
- gender or family origin)?
- What social and cultural beliefs, attitudes or practices might affect this issue?
- How do different groups perceive the intervention or available options? What are
- their preferences?
- What approaches are used in practice? How effective are they in the views of
- different groups of practitioners, people using services or stakeholders?
- What is a desired, appropriate or acceptable outcome for people using services?
- 19 What outcomes are important to them? What do practitioner, service user or
- stakeholder groups perceive to be the factors that may help or hinder change in
- 21 this area?
- What do people affected by the quideline think about current or proposed
- 23 practice?
- Why do people make the choices they do or behave in the way that they do?
- How is a public health issue represented in the media and popular culture?
- 26 Quantitative and qualitative information can also be used to supplement logic models
- 27 (see section 2.3). They can also be combined in a single review (mixed methods)
- when appropriate (for example, to address review questions about factors that help
- or hinder implementation or to assess why an intervention does or does not work).
- 30 Examples of questions for which qualitative evidence might supplement quantitative
- 31 evidence include:

- How acceptable is the intervention to people using services or practitioners?
- How accessible is the intervention or service to different groups of people using
- 3 services? What factors affect its accessibility?
- Does the mode or organisation of delivery (including the type of relevant
- 5 practitioner, the setting and language) affect user perceptions?
- 6 Often reviews of quantitative or qualitative studies (secondary evidence) already
- 7 exist (for example, those developed by internationally recognised producers of
- 8 systematic reviews such as Cochrane, the Campbell Collaboration and the Joanna
- 9 Briggs Institute among others). Existing reviews may include systematic reviews
- 10 (with or without a meta-analysis or individual patient data analysis) and
- 11 non-systematic literature reviews and meta-analyses. Well-conducted systematic
- reviews may be of particular value as sources of evidence (see appendix H for
- checklists to assess risk of bias or quality of studies when developing guidelines).
- 14 Some reviews may be more useful as background information or as additional
- sources of potentially relevant primary studies. This is because they may:
- not cover inclusion and exclusion criteria relevant to the guideline topic's referral
- and parameters (for example, comparable research questions, relevant outcomes,
- settings, population groups or time periods)
- group together different outcome or study types
- include data that are difficult or impossible to separate appropriately
- not provide enough data to develop recommendations (for example, some reviews
- do not provide sufficient detail on specific interventions making it necessary to
- refer to the primary studies).
- 24 Conversely, some high-quality systematic reviews may provide enhanced data not
- 25 available in the primary studies. For example, authors of the review may have
- contacted the authors of the primary studies or other related bodies in order to
- include additional relevant data in their review, or may have undertaken additional
- analyses (such as individual patient data analyses). In addition, if high-quality
- 29 reviews are in progress (protocol published) at the time of development of the
- 30 quideline, the developer may choose to contact the authors for permission to access
- pre-publication data for inclusion in the guideline (see section 5.5).

- 1 Systematic reviews can also be useful when developing the scope and when
- 2 defining review questions, outcomes and outcome measures for the guideline
- 3 evidence reviews. The discussion section of a systematic review can also help to
- 4 identify some of the limitations or difficulties associated with a topic, for example,
- 5 through a critical appraisal of the limitations of the evidence base. The information
- 6 specialists may also wish to consider the search strategies of high-quality systematic
- 7 reviews. These can provide useful search approaches for capturing different key
- 8 concepts. They can also provide potentially useful search terms and combinations of
- 9 terms, which have been carefully tailored for a range of databases.
- High-quality systematic reviews that are directly applicable to the guideline review
- question can be used as a source of data, particularly for complex organisational,
- behavioural and population level questions.
- 13 When considering using results from an existing high-quality review, due account
- should be taken of the following:
- The parameters (for example, research question, PICO, inclusion and exclusion
- criteria) of the review are sufficiently similar to the review protocol of the guideline
- 17 review question. In such cases, a search should be undertaken for primary studies
- published after the search date covered by the existing review.
- Whether the use of existing high-quality reviews will be sufficient to address the
- 20 guideline review question if the evidence base for the guideline topic is very large.

Colloquial evidence

- 22 'Colloquial evidence' can complement scientific evidence or provide missing
- information on context. It can come from expert testimony (see section 3.5), from
- 24 members of the committee, from a reference group of people using services (see
- section 3.2) or from comments from registered stakeholders (see section 10.1).
- 26 Colloquial evidence includes evidence about values (including political judgement),
- 27 practical considerations (such as resources, professional experience or expertise
- and habits or traditions, the experience of people using services) and the interests of
- 29 specific groups (views of lobbyists and pressure groups).
- 30 An example of colloquial evidence is expert testimony. Sometimes oral or written
- 31 evidence from outside the committee is needed for developing recommendations, if

- 1 limited primary research is available or more information on current practice is
- 2 needed to inform the committee's decision-making. Inclusion criteria for oral or
- 3 written evidence specify the population and interventions for each review question, to
- 4 allow filtering and selection of oral and written evidence submitted to the committee.

5 Other evidence

- 6 Depending on the nature of the guideline topic and the review question, other
- 7 sources of relevant evidence such as real world evidence, reports, audits, and
- 8 service evaluation may be included. This should be agreed with the NICE staff with
- 9 responsibility for quality assurance before proceeding. The quality, reliability and
- applicability of the evidence is assessed according to standard processes (see
- 11 appendix H).

13

12 See also chapter 8 on linking and using evidence from non-NICE guidance.

4.5 Planning the evidence review

- 14 For each guideline evidence review, a review protocol is prepared that outlines the
- background, the objectives and the planned methods. This protocol will explain how
- the review is to be carried out and will help the reviewer to plan and think through the
- different stages. In addition, the review protocol should make it possible for the
- review to be repeated by others at a later date. A protocol should also make it clear
- 19 how equality issues have been considered in planning the review work, if
- appropriate.

21 Structure of the review protocol

- 22 The protocol should describe any differences from the methods described in this
- 23 manual (chapters 5 to 7), rather than duplicating the methodology stated here. It
- should include the components outlined in appendix I.
- 25 When a guideline is updating a published guideline, the protocol from the published
- 26 guideline, if available, should be used to outline how the review question would be
- addressed. Information gathered during surveillance and scoping of the guideline
- should also be added. This might include new interventions and comparators, and
- 29 extension of the population.

1 Process for developing the review protocol

- 2 The review protocol should be drafted by the developer, with input from the guideline
- 3 committee, after the review question has been agreed and before starting the
- 4 evidence review. It should then be reviewed and approved by NICE staff with
- 5 responsibility for quality assurance.
- 6 All review protocols should be registered on the PROSERO database before the
- 7 completion of data extraction. The review protocol, principal search strategy (see
- 8 section 5.4) and a version of the economic plan (see section 7.5) are published on
- 9 the NICE website at least 6 weeks before the release of the draft guideline. Any
- 10 changes made to a protocol in the course of guideline development should be
- agreed with NICE staff with responsibility for quality assurance and should be
- described and updated on the PROSERO database.

4.6 References and further reading

- 14 Altman DG, Vergouwe Y, Royston P et al. (2009) Prognosis and prognostic
- research: validating a prognostic model. BMJ 338: b605
- 16 Cargo M, Harris J, Pantoja T et al. (2017) Cochrane Qualitative and Implementation
- 17 Methods Group Guidance Paper 3: Methods for assessing evidence on intervention
- implementation. Journal of Clinical Epidemiology doi: 10.1016/j.jclinepi.2017.11.028.
- 19 Centre for Reviews and Dissemination (2009) Systematic reviews: CRD's guidance
- 20 for undertaking reviews in health care. Centre for Reviews and Dissemination,
- 21 University of York

- 22 Cochrane Diagnostic Test Accuracy Working Group (2008) Cochrane handbook for
- 23 <u>diagnostic test accuracy reviews</u>. (Updated December 2013). The Cochrane
- 24 Collaboration
- 25 Collins GS, Reitsma JB, Altman DG et al. (2015) Transparent reporting of a
- 26 multivariable prediction model for individual prognosis or diagnosis (TRIPOD): the
- 27 TRIPOD statement. BMJ doi: 10.1136/bmj.g7594
- 28 Craig P, Dieppe P, McIntyre S et al. on behalf of the MRC (2008) Developing and
- 29 evaluating complex interventions: new guidance. London: Medical Research Council

- 1 Craig P, Cooper C, Gunnell D et al. on behalf of the MRC (2011) Using natural
- 2 experiments to evaluate population health interventions: guidance for producers and
- 3 users of evidence. London: Medical Research Council
- 4 Flemming K, Booth A, Hannes K et al. (2017) Cochrane Qualitative and
- 5 Implementation Methods Group Guidance Paper 5: Reporting guidelines for
- 6 qualitative, implementation and process evaluation evidence syntheses. Journal of
- 7 Clinical Epidemiology doi: 10.1016/j.jclinepi.2017.10.022.
- 8 Harden A, Garcia J, Oliver S et al. (2004) Applying systematic review methods to
- 9 studies of people's views: an example from public health research. Journal of
- 10 Epidemiology and Community Health 58: 794–800
- Harden A, Thomas J, Cargo M et al. (2018) Cochrane Qualitative and
- 12 Implementation Methods Group Guidance Paper 4: Methods for integrating
- 13 qualitative and implementation evidence within intervention effectiveness reviews.
- Journal of Clinical Epidemiology doi: 10.1016/j.jclinepi.2017.11.029.
- Harris JL, Booth A, Cargo M et al. (2018) Cochrane Qualitative and Implementation
- 16 Methods Group Guidance series paper 6: Methods for question formulation,
- searching and protocol development for qualitative evidence synthesis. Journal of
- 18 Clinical Epidemiology doi: 10.1016/j.jclinepi.2017.10.023
- 19 Higgins JPT, Green S, editors (2008) Cochrane handbook for systematic reviews of
- interventions, version 5.1.0 (updated March 2011). The Cochrane Collaboration
- Justice AC, Covinsky KE, Berlin JA (1999) Assessing the generalizability of
- 22 prognostic information. Annals of Internal Medicine 130: 515–24.
- 23 Kelly MP, Swann C, Morgan A et al. (2002) Methodological problems in constructing
- the evidence base in public health. London: Health Development Agency
- 25 Kelly MP, Moore TA (2012) The judgement process in evidence-based medicine and
- health technology assessment. Social Theory and Health 10:1–19
- 27 Kirkham JJ, Gorst S, Altman DG et al. (2016) Core Outcome Set-STAndards for 20
- 28 Reporting: The COS-STAR Statement. PLoS: 21

- 1 Kirkham JJ, Davis K, Altman DG et al. (2017) Core Outcome Set-23 STAndards for
- 2 Development: The COS-STAD Recommendations. PLoS
- 3 Lomas J, Culyer T, McCutcheon C et al. (2005) Conceptualizing and combining
- 4 evidence for health system guidance: final report. Ottawa: Canadian Health Services
- 5 Research Foundation
- 6 Lord SJ, Irwig L, Simes RJ (2006) When is measuring sensitivity and specificity
- 7 sufficient to evaluate a diagnostic test, and when do we need randomized trials?
- 8 Annals of Internal Medicine 144: 850–5
- 9 Moons KG, Kengne AP, Grobbee DE et al. (2012) Risk prediction models: II.
- External validation, model updating, and impact assessment. Heart 98: 691–8.
- 11 Moons KGM, Altman DG, Reitsma JB et al. (2015) Transparent Reporting of a
- 12 <u>multivariable prediction model for Individual Prognosis Or Diagnosis (TRIPOD):</u>
- 13 Explanation and Elaboration. Annals of Internal Medicine 162: W1–W73
- Muir Gray JM (1996) Evidence-based healthcare. London: Churchill Livingstone
- Noyes J, Booth A, Cargo M et al. (2017) <u>Cochrane Qualitative and Implementation</u>
- 16 Methods Group Guidance Series Paper 1: Introduction Journal of Clinical
- 17 Epidemiology doi: 10.1016/j.jclinepi.2017.09.025
- Noyes J, Booth A, Flemming K et al. (2018) Cochrane Qualitative and
- 19 Implementation Methods Group Guidance Paper 2: Methods for assessing
- 20 methodological limitations, data extraction and synthesis, and confidence in
- 21 <u>synthesized qualitative findings</u>. Journal of Clinical Epidemiology doi:
- 22 10.1016/j.jclinepi.2017.06.020.
- 23 Ogilvie D, Hamilton V, Egan M et al. (2005) Systematic reviews of health effects of
- social interventions: 1. Finding the evidence: how far should you go? Journal of
- 25 Epidemiology and Community Health 59: 804–8
- Ogilvie D, Egan M, Hamilton V et al. (2005) Systematic reviews of health effects of
- 27 <u>social interventions: 2. Best available evidence: how low should you go?</u> Journal of
- 28 Epidemiology and Community Health 59: 886–92

- 1 Petticrew M (2003) Why certain systematic reviews reach uncertain conclusions.
- 2 British Medical Journal 326: 756–8
- 3 Petticrew M, Roberts H (2003) Evidence, hierarchies, and typologies: horses for
- 4 <u>courses</u>. Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health 57: 527–9
- 5 Popay J, Rogers A, Williams G (1998) Rationale and standards for the systematic
- 6 review of qualitative literature in health services research. Qualitative Health
- 7 Research 8: 341–51
- 8 Richardson WS, Wilson MS, Nishikawa J et al. (1995) The well-built clinical question:
- 9 a key to evidence-based decisions. American College of Physicians Journal Club
- 10 123: A12–3
- 11 Rychetnik L, Frommer M, Hawe P et al. (2002) Criteria for evaluating evidence on
- 12 <u>public health interventions</u>. Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health 56: 119
- 13 Steyerberg EW (2009) Clinical prediction models: a practical approach to
- development, validation, and updating. Springer
- 15 Steverberg EW, Harrell FE, Borsboom GJJM et al. (2001) Internal validation of
- predictive models: efficiency of some procedures for logistic regression analysis.
- 17 Journal of Clinical Epidemiology 54: 774–81
- 18 Steyerberg EW, Bleeker SE, Moll HA et al. (2003) Internal and external validation of
- 19 predictive models: a simulation study of bias and precision in small samples. Journal
- of Clinical Epidemiology 56: 441–7.
- 21 Summarized research for Information Retrieval in HTA (SuRe Info) [online; accessed
- 22 13 September 2017]
- 23 Tannahill A (2008) Beyond evidence to ethics: a decision making framework for
- 24 <u>health promotion, public health and health improvement</u>. Health Promotion
- 25 International 23: 380–90
- Victora C, Habicht J, Bryce J (2004) Evidence-based public health: moving beyond
- 27 <u>randomized trials</u>. American Journal of Public Health 94: 400–5

5 Identifying the evidence: literature searching and

evidence submission

5.1 Introduction

1

2

- 4 The systematic identification of evidence is an essential step in developing NICE
- 5 guidelines. Literature searches should be systematic, transparent and reproducible
- 6 to minimise 'dissemination biases'. These may affect the results of reviews and
- 7 include publication bias and database bias.
- 8 This chapter provides advice on the sources to search and on how to develop
- 9 strategies for systematic literature searches to identify the best available evidence. It
- also provides advice on other areas of information management that form an
- important part of guideline development. These include quality assurance, re-running
- searches, documenting the search process, and the use of reference management
- or systematic review software. The methods for undertaking scoping searches are
- described in chapter 2. For information on searching for economic evidence, see
- chapter 7.
- NICE encourages the use of search methods that balance recall and precision. The
- aim is to identify the best available evidence to address a particular question without
- producing an unmanageable volume of results.
- 19 A flexible approach to the search for evidence should be adopted, guided by the
- subject of the question and type of evidence sought. When the guidelines is an
- update, the approach can also be informed by searches for the existing guideline
- 22 and subsequent surveillance review. Searching includes:
- tailoring the search approach to the eligibility/inclusion criteria of the review
- 24 question, as specified in the review protocol
- selecting appropriate sources according to the eligibility/inclusion criteria of the
- review question, as specified in the review protocol
- using supplementary search techniques, such as citation searching, as
- 28 appropriate
- continuous review of how best to find evidence and where.

- 1 A flexible approach will allow evidence to be identified both systematically and in the
- 2 most efficient manner. For example, for a review question on the effectiveness of a
- 3 pharmacological intervention it may be possible to search a relatively small number
- 4 of sources (see <u>section 5.3</u>) and to develop a systematic search strategy using the
- 5 PICO framework (see <u>section 5.4</u>). For questions about complex interventions, the
- 6 evidence may be more widely scattered across sources and less consistently
- 7 described. In these cases it may be necessary to search a wider range of sources
- 8 and to consider other question frameworks and use of supplementary searching
- 9 approaches.
- 10 The Cochrane handbook for systematic reviews of interventions and the Campbell
- 11 Collaboration's searching for studies methods guide offer good overviews of
- literature searching (Lefebvre et al. 2011; Kugley et al. 2017). The <u>SuRe Info</u>
- 13 <u>resource</u> also provides research-based advice on information retrieval for systematic
- 14 reviews and is updated twice a year.

15 **5.2 Search protocols**

- 16 Search protocols should be developed by the information specialist and agreed with
- the other members of the developer's team before undertaking a systematic search.
- Search protocols are part of the review protocol (see table 4.1), which is signed off
- by the committee. When developing search protocols, the information specialist may
- ask the committee for expert advice (for example, when a condition is described in
- 21 many different ways in the literature).
- 22 Search protocols pre-define how the evidence is identified and provide a basis for
- 23 developing the search strategies. Search protocols should include the following
- 24 elements:
- search approach, tailored to the review question
- sources to be searched (see section 5.3)
- plans to use any supplementary search techniques, when known at the protocol
- development stage, and the reasons for their use
- limits to be applied to the search.

1 **5.3 Sources**

- 2 Searches should include a mix of bibliographic databases, websites and other
- 3 sources depending on the subject of the review question and the type of evidence
- 4 sought.
- 5 For most searches there will be key sources that should be prioritised, and other
- 6 potentially relevant sources that could be considered. It is important to ensure
- 7 adequate coverage of the relevant literature and to search a range of sources, but
- 8 there should be clear reasons, with only those likely to yield relevant results
- 9 included. (See also section 7.4 for information on searching for economic literature.)
- 10 The selection of sources will vary according to the requirements of the review
- 11 question. For reviews of the effectiveness of pharmacological interventions the
- 12 following should be prioritised for searching:
- the Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials (CENTRAL)
- the Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews (CDSR)
- 15 Embase
- 16 MEDLINE.
- 17 For this type of review question, any relevant drug safety information from the
- Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) should also be
- 19 identified.
- 20 For other questions, it might be as or more important to search other sources.
- 21 Examples of other sources include, but are not limited to:
- PsycINFO (psychology and psychiatry)
- ASSIA (Applied Social Sciences Index and Abstracts)
- Social Policy and Practice, Social Care Online
- Sociological Abstracts
- HMIC (Health Management Information Consortium)
- HealthTalk.
- For service delivery questions, some of the evidence may be in the form of modelling
- 29 studies published in journals related to operational research, statistical and

- 1 mathematical methods rather than in health journals. These are less likely to be
- 2 indexed in healthcare databases such as MEDLINE, and consideration should be
- 3 given to sources likely to retrieve this evidence.
- 4 The following sources which may be useful for service delivery questions:
- Science Citation Index
- 6 HMIC
- Social Care Online or Social Policy Online
- 8 Kings Fund.
- 9 Evidence may also be primary data needed to inform parameters identified in the
- design-orientated conceptual model. For information on searching for model inputs,
- see chapter 7.
- 12 For some review questions, for example, where evidence is likely to be published in
- 13 non-journal sources, it may be appropriate to search for grey literature. Useful
- sources of grey literature include:
- 15 HMIC
- 16 OpenGrev
- 17 CORE.
- 18 Reports from organisations such as the European Medicines Agency and the US
- 19 Food and Drug Administration may also be of value. The Canadian Agency for Drugs
- and Technology in Health (CADTH) Grey Matters may also be useful for identifying
- sources for grey literature, as well as web search tools, such as NICE Evidence
- 22 Search and Trip. Topic experts on the committee may also be able to suggest
- 23 appropriate sources for grey literature.
- A list is provided in appendix G as a starting point for identifying potential relevant
- 25 sources.

26 **5.4 Developing search strategies**

- 27 Devising a search strategy
- 28 The approach to devising and structuring search strategies should be informed by
- 29 the review question. For example, the PICO (population, intervention, comparator

- and outcome) or the SPICE (setting, perspective, intervention, comparison,
- 2 evaluation; Booth 2006) framework can be used to structure a search strategy for an
- 3 intervention question. Other frameworks may be more appropriate and the choice
- 4 should reflect the question type and search approach. Davies (2011) undertook a
- 5 review of possible frameworks and <u>SuRe Info</u> has a useful summary of alternatives
- 6 to PICO which have been evaluated. When using a framework, it is important to
- 7 consider which concepts to include in the strategy because some concepts may not
- 8 be mentioned in the titles, abstracts or subject headings of a database record. This is
- 9 a particular challenge when the literature is less well defined and/or indexed. It is
- important to ensure that relevant studies are not missed as a result of an overly
- 11 complex search structure.
- 12 Some topics are complex, for example, where search requirements evolve as
- evidence is identified and it is important to balance recall and precision. One
- approach, when the relevant literature for a question is less well defined or indexed,
- is to use a multi-stranded method. This involves developing several shorter search
- strategies (strands) with an emphasis on precision. Each strand should reflect 1 way
- in which the relevant literature may be described. The strands are then combined.
- Another approach is to use an iterative and/or 'stepped' method. Searching is done
- in several stages, with each search taking into account the evidence that has already
- 20 been retrieved. Additional steps are added if the developer decides that the quantity
- or quality of the evidence already gathered is not sufficient. It may also be
- 22 appropriate to add an additional search step to identify literature published between
- 23 the final search date of a study and its inclusion in a systematic review. If the
- developer then finds there are topics of interest not covered by existing reviews, it
- would be appropriate to carry out additional searching on specific topics. A decision
- to use a stepped or iterative approach should be agreed by the developer and NICE
- staff with responsibility for quality assurance because it can affect timelines. Some
- 28 topics may have multiple information needs, for example, sometimes indirect
- 29 evidence is needed for network meta-analyses. This may involve developing iterative
- searches for a set of relevant comparators as opposed to a search for pre-
- determined comparators (Hawkins et al. 2009). This type of searching can be time
- consuming and the developer should agree a decision to do this with NICE staff with

- 1 responsibility for quality assurance. Searching for observational data for service
- 2 delivery questions can also be very time consuming. Registry data can be a source
- 3 of estimates of treatment effects, but if the committee cannot estimate the extent or
- 4 direction of any biases, the value of the data is greatly reduced and the usefulness of
- 5 searching is low.
- 6 For some types of review question, for example, questions for which qualitative
- 7 research is more appropriate, it may not be necessary to identify all the literature on
- 8 a topic. The objective may be to reach theoretical saturation, where any additional
- 9 studies identified merely support the existing line of argument, rather than identify all
- relevant studies. In this context, it may be possible to undertake searches which are
- more precise. The search approaches for this type of evidence have been reviewed
- and summarised by Booth (2016) and can be used to guide practice.
- Review questions that overlap and can be grouped together should be identified for
- searching purposes. For example, questions with the same population may involve
- 15 comparing several interventions. This should make it possible to carry out a single
- search that covers all the interventions, although this approach may retrieve a large
- 17 number of studies.

18 Identifying search terms

- 19 Search strategies should usually consist of a combination of subject headings and
- 20 'free-text' terms from the titles and abstracts of relevant studies. When identifying
- subject headings, variations in thesaurus and indexing terms for each database
- should be taken into account: for example, MeSH (Medical Subject Headings) in
- 23 MEDLINE, Emtree in Embase. Not all databases will have indexing terms and some
- 24 databases will contain records which have not yet been indexed. Also, not all search
- concepts will have a subject heading, so free-text terms should also be used.
- 26 Free-text terms may include synonyms, acronyms and abbreviations, spelling
- variants, old and new terminology, brand and generic medicine names, and lay and
- 28 medical terminology. For a guideline that is being updated, previous search
- 29 strategies, including surveillance searches, should be reviewed and used to inform
- search strategy design. New or changed terms should be identified, as well as any
- changes to indexing terms. This also applies when an existing review, for example a

- 1 Cochrane review, is being updated to answer a review question. Known key studies
- 2 can be a useful source to identify search terms, but additional sources such as
- 3 reports, guidelines, and topic-specific websites or topic experts can also be helpful.
- 4 Comprehensively identifying search terms may present challenges. For example, for
- 5 public health social care or implementation reviews many databases do not use a
- 6 controlled vocabulary for indexing records. Sometimes controlled vocabularies are
- 7 used but do not include terms that adequately cover the search concept(s), which
- 8 often cross a number of disciplines. In addition, the use of natural language varies
- 9 between studies, and concepts may not be described in a consistent way. In light of
- these challenges, the development of a search strategy should always be an
- iterative process between the information specialist(s), the developer and, when
- necessary, the committee and NICE staff with a quality assurance role (Alpi 2005,
- 13 Papaioannou et al. 2010).
- 14 A further challenge may arise from websites or certain databases having limited
- search functionality. It may be necessary to simplify the search strategy, using fewer
- search terms or undertaking multiple searches of the same resource with different
- 17 search term combinations.
- 18 It may be helpful to use frequency analysis or text mining to develop the search
- strategy (Stansfield et al. 2017, Hausner et al. 2012). Tools such as PubReMiner;
- 20 Medline Ranker can help, either by highlighting search terms that might not
- otherwise be apparent, or by flagging terms of high value when exhaustive synonym
- searching is unfeasible or inadvisable. This is a rapidly developing area, but in
- 23 principle NICE supports the use of such technologies to inform search development.
- 24 .
- 25 Limits and filters
- Searches should be limited to studies reported in English. When there are likely to
- be animal studies in the evidence base, these can be excluded from the search
- 28 results in some databases.
- 29 Limiting searches by date will depend on the topic and the nature of the evidence
- base (for example, when most of the research was published). When the guideline is

- an update, searches may be limited by date, but only if appropriate (for example, the
- 2 inclusion/exclusion criteria for the update are the same as for the existing guideline).
- If there are relevant good-quality published systematic reviews (see chapter 4), it
- 4 may be possible to limit additional searching to the time since the searches for the
- 5 published reviews were conducted. For some databases, restricting the search by
- 6 date is difficult. When this is the case, searches can be run without date limits, using
- 7 reference management or systematic review software to separate new results. The
- 8 date range for the search, and the use of existing reviews, should be agreed before
- 9 searching and documented in the search protocol (see <u>section 5.2</u>).
- Depending on the review question, it may be appropriate to limit searches to
- particular study designs. For example, for review questions on the effectiveness of
- interventions, it may be more efficient to search for systematic reviews, followed by
- controlled trials followed by observational studies. This prevents unnecessary
- searching and review work. The best way to limit searches by study design is to use
- an appropriate search filter (strings of search terms), rather than using database
- publication type field limits, to ensure the search strategy is transparent and
- 17 reproducible.
- Other search filters relating to age, setting, geography, and health inequalities can
- 19 also be applied as relevant. The most comprehensive list of available search filters is
- the search filter resource of the InterTASC Information Specialists' Sub-Group. This
- 21 resource also includes critical appraisal tools, which can be used for filter selection.
- 22 Search filters should, however, be used with caution because concepts such as
- study design, age, setting and geography may not be adequately described in the
- 24 title or abstract of a database record, and may not be captured by the indexing.
- NICE is not prescriptive about which search filters should be used because there is
- often limited evidence on the performance of individual filters. The InterTASC
- 27 Information Specialists' Sub-Group search filter resource lists methodological filters
- and provides critical appraisal of some filters. Additionally, McKibbon (2009) reviews
- 29 the performance date of 38 randomised controlled trial filters. Both sources may be a
- useful when choosing a filter. Alternative methods for refining a search to achieve an
- 31 adequate balance of recall and precision should be used when filters are not
- 32 appropriate.

1 Supplementary search techniques

- 2 Supplementary search techniques should be used in addition to database searching
- when it is known, or reasonably likely, that relevant evidence is either not indexed in
- 4 bibliographic databases and/or that it is difficult to retrieve from databases in a way
- 5 that adequately balances recall and precision. Supplementary search techniques
- 6 might include forward and backward citation searching, journal hand-searches or
- 7 contacting experts and stakeholders.
- 8 Reviews (for example, systematic reviews, literature reviews and meta-analyses)
- 9 may provide an additional source of primary studies. The reference lists in the
- reviews can be used to identify potentially relevant primary studies.
- Supplementary search techniques should follow the same principles of transparency,
- rigour and reproducibility as other search methods.
- 13 Supplementary search techniques should be considered at the outset and
- documented in the search protocol (see section 5.2), if possible. They should also be
- 15 documented in the evidence review.

26

16 5.5 Calls for evidence from stakeholders

17 Stakeholders' role in providing evidence

- In some topic areas or for some review questions, NICE staff with responsibility for
- 19 quality assurance, the developer or committee may believe that there is relevant
- 20 evidence in addition to that identified by the searches. In these situations, the
- developer may invite stakeholders, and possibly also other relevant organisations or
- individuals with a significant role or interest (see section 3.5 on expert witnesses), to
- 23 submit evidence. A call for evidence is issued directly to registered stakeholders and
- via the NICE website. Examples and details of process are included in appendix J.
- 25 Confidential information should be kept to an absolute minimum.

5.6 Health inequalities and equality and diversity

- 27 All searches should be inclusive, capturing evidence related to health inequalities or
- impacts on equality relevant to the guideline topic. For example, if the population
- 29 group is 'older people' a search for 'older people' should pick up subpopulations such
- as 'disabled older people' or 'black and minority ethnic older people'. Similarly, if the

- setting is 'communities and religious places', the search terms should cover all
- 2 relevant faith settings (such as 'church', 'temple' and 'mosque').

3 5.7 Quality assurance

- 4 Quality assuring the literature search is an important step in guideline development.
- 5 Studies have shown that errors do occur (Sampson 2006). Although developed
- 6 specifically for Cochrane reviews, the Methodological Expectations of Cochrane
- 7 Intervention Reviews (MECIR) may be useful to guide practice. They set out the
- 8 components which can, ensure that the identification of the evidence base is
- 9 comprehensive, transparent and reproducible (Higgins et al. 2016).
- 10 For each search (including economic searches), the principal database search
- strategy should be quality assured by a second information specialist to maintain a
- consistently high standard for identifying the evidence. A checklist should be used to
- ensure clarity and consistency when quality assuring search strategies. An example
- is the PRESS 2015 Guideline Evidence-Based Checklist (McGowan et al. 2016).
- 15 Each time the principal database strategy is adapted for use in another database, it
- is good practice for it to be peer reviewed by a second information specialist to
- 17 ensure quality and consistency is maintained.
- As part of quality assurance, there is also an opportunity to undertake an audit of
- search results to analyse how the evidence for the guideline was identified. Using
- the final list of included studies, it is possible to determine the contribution of
- 21 individual sources and search techniques. This can provide valuable data for
- informing the search approach for future surveillance and guideline updates.

5.8 Reference management

- 24 Electronic records of the references retrieved by searches should be stored using
- 25 systematic review software such as EPPI-Reviewer or reference management
- software such as EndNote. Records can be exported from bibliographic databases
- and imported automatically into the software using import filters.

5.9 Documenting the search

- 2 Details of the search are published on the NICE website with the consultation on the
- 3 draft guideline, and the final guideline.
- 4 Thorough documentation facilitates future surveillance and updating, and there are
- 5 several published guides that cover this, including MECIR and the PRISMA checklist
- 6 (Moher 2009). Documenting the search begins with creating the search protocol (see
- 7 section 5.2). If using an emergent 'stepped' approach, initial search strategies, key
- 8 decision points and the reasons for subsequent search steps should be clearly
- 9 documented in the search protocol.
- Records should be kept of the searches undertaken during guideline development
- for all review questions to ensure that the process for identifying the evidence base
- is transparent and reproducible.
- For each question, or group of questions, the following information should be
- 14 documented:

- details of search approach with reasons (this should include any notable
- differences between the searches for an existing guideline and those for an
- 17 update of the guideline)
- date(s) on which the searches were carried out, including the date(s) of any re-run
- searches (see <u>section 5.10</u>)
- names of the databases, database host systems and database coverage
- 21 dates/specific segment
- names of any non-database sources searched and number of citations retrieved
- search strategies for all sources and number or citations retrieved (these should
- be annotated to explain any decisions on included and excluded terms which are
- 25 not self-explanatory)
- details of any supplementary searching undertaken, including the reasons
- any limits or search filters applied to the search (for example, language, date,
- study design).

1 5.10 Re-running searches

- 2 Searches undertaken to identify evidence for each review question (including
- 3 economics searches) may be re-run to identify any further evidence that has been
- 4 published since the search was last run. For example, searches should be re-run if
- 5 the evidence base changes quickly, or if there is reason to believe that substantial
- 6 new evidence exists, or if the development time is longer than usual. Searching
- 7 PubMed or OVID's MEDLINE Epub Ahead of Print at this stage, in addition to
- 8 MEDLINE, is useful to identify 'ahead-of-print' citations.
- 9 A decision to re-run searches will be taken by the developer and members of NICE
- staff with a quality assurance role.
- 11 If undertaken, searches should be re-run at least 6 to 8 weeks before the final
- 12 committee meeting before consultation.
- 13 If evidence is identified after the last cut-off date for searching but before publication,
- 14 a judgment on its impact should be made by the developer and NICE staff with a
- 15 quality assurance role. In exceptional circumstances, this evidence can be
- 16 considered if its impact is judged as substantial.

17 **5.11 References and further reading**

- Alpi K (2005) Expert searching in public health. Journal of the Medical Library
- 19 Association 93: 97–103
- 20 Beynon R, Leeflang MM, McDonald S et al. (2013) Search strategies to identify
- 21 diagnostic accuracy studies in MEDLINE and Embase. Cochrane Database of
- 22 Systematic Reviews 2013, Issue 9.
- 23 Booth A (2006) Clear and present questions: formulating questions for evidence
- 24 based practice. Library Hi Tech 24: 355–68
- 25 Booth A (2016) Searching for qualitative research for inclusion in systematic reviews:
- 26 a structured methodological review. Systematic Reviews 5:74

- 1 Booth A, Harris J, Croot E et al. (2013) <u>Towards a methodology for cluster searching</u>
- 2 to provide conceptual and contextual "richness" for systematic reviews of complex
- 3 <u>interventions: case study (CLUSTER)</u>. BMC Medical Research Methodology 13: 118
- 4 Brunton J, Stansfield C, Thomas J (2017) Finding relevant studies. In: Gough D,
- 5 Oliver S, Thomas J, editors. Introduction to systematic reviews. London: Sage
- 6 Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies in Health (2015) Grey Matters: a
- 7 practical tool for sourcing health-related grey literature [online; accessed 31 January
- 8 2018]
- 9 Centre for Reviews and Dissemination (2009) Systematic reviews: CRD's guidance
- for undertaking reviews in health care. University of York: Centre for Reviews and
- 11 Dissemination
- Davies K (2011) Formulating the evidence based practice question: a review of the
- frameworks. Evidence Based Library and Information Practice 6: 75–80
- 14 Glanville J, Lefebvre C, Wright K (editors) (2008, updated 2017) The InterTASC
- 15 Information Specialists' Subgroup Search Filters Resource [online; accessed 31
- 16 January 2018]
- 17 Gough D, Thomas J, Oliver S (2012) Clarifying differences between review designs
- and methods. Systematic Reviews 1: 28.
- 19 Hausner E, Waffenschmidt S, Kaiser T et al. (2012) Routine development of
- 20 objectively derived search strategies. Systematic Reviews 1: 19
- 21 Hawkins N, Scott DA, Woods B. (2009) How far do you go? Efficient searching for
- indirect evidence. Medical Decision Making 29: 273–81
- 23 Higgins JPT, Lasserson T, Chandler J et al. (2016) Methodological expectations of
- 24 Cochrane intervention reviews. London: Cochrane.
- Jenkins M (2004) Evaluation of methodological search filters a review. Health
- 26 Information and Libraries Journal 21: 148–63

- 1 Kugley S, Wade A, Thomas J et al. (2017) Searching for studies: a guide to
- 2 information retrieval for Campbell systematic reviews. Oslo: The Campbell
- 3 Collaboration
- 4 Lefebvre C, Manheimer E, Glanville J (2011) Searching for studies. In: Higgins JPT,
- 5 Green S, editors. Cochrane handbook for systematic reviews of interventions,
- 6 version 5.1.0 (updated March 2011). The Cochrane Collaboration
- 7 McGowan J, Sampson M, Salzwedel DM et al. (2016) PRESS Peer Review of
- 8 <u>Electronic Search Strategies: 2015 guideline statement</u>. Journal of Clinical
- 9 Epidemiology 75: 40–6
- 10 McKibbon KA, Wilczynski NL, Haynes RB. (2009) Retrieving randomized controlled
- trials from MEDLINE: a comparison of 38 published search filters. Health Information
- and Libraries Journal 26: 187-202
- 13 Moher D, Tetziaff J, Altman DG (2009) Preferred reporting items for systematic
- reviews and meta-analyses: the PRISMA statement. Annals of Internal Medicine 15:
- 15 264–9
- Morrison A, Polisena J, Husereau D et al. (2012) The effect of English-language
- 17 restriction on systematic review-based meta-analyses: a systematic review of
- empirical studies. International Journal of Technology Assessment in Health Care
- 19 28: 138–44
- 20 Paisley S, Levay P, Ananiadou S et al. . Public health, policy and the evidence-
- 21 based medicine paradigm: challenges and innovations in methods of searching.
- 22 Research Synthesis Methods (in press)
- 23 Papaioannou D, Sutton A, Carroll C et al. (2010) Literature searching for social
- 24 science systematic reviews: consideration of a range of search techniques. Health
- 25 Information Libraries Journal 27: 114–22
- Sampson M, McGowan J (2006) Errors in search strategies were identified by type
- 27 and frequency. Journal of Clinical Epidemiology 59: 1057–63

- 1 Stansfield C, O'Mara-Eves A, Thomas J (2017) <u>Text mining for search term</u>
- 2 <u>development in systematic reviewing: a discussion of some methods and challenges.</u>
- 3 Research Synthesis Methods8: 355-65
- 4 <u>Summarized research for Information Retrieval in HTA</u> (SuRe Info). [online;
- 5 accessed 13 September 2017]

6

6 Reviewing research evidence

- 2 Reviewing evidence is an explicit, systematic and transparent process that can be
- 3 applied to both quantitative (experimental and observational) and qualitative
- 4 evidence (see chapter 4). The key aim of any review is to provide a summary of the
- 5 relevant evidence to ensure that the committee can make fully informed decisions
- 6 about its recommendations. This chapter describes how evidence is reviewed in the
- 7 development of guidelines.

1

- 8 Evidence reviews for NICE guidelines summarise the evidence and its limitations so
- 9 that the committee can interpret the evidence and make appropriate
- 10 recommendations, even where there is uncertainty.
- Evidence identified during literature searches and from other sources (see chapter 5)
- should be reviewed against the review protocol to identify the most appropriate
- information to answer the review questions. The evidence review process used to
- inform guidelines must be explicit and transparent and involves 6 main steps:
- writing the review protocol (see section 4.5)
- identifying and selecting relevant evidence
- critical appraisal

23

- extracting and synthesising the results
- assessing quality/certainty in the evidence
- interpreting the results.
- 21 Any substantial deviations from these steps need to be agreed, in advance, with
- 22 NICE staff with a quality assurance role.

6.1 Identifying and selecting relevant evidence

- 24 The process of selecting relevant evidence is common to all evidence reviews; the
- other steps are discussed in relation to the main types of review questions. The
- same rigour should be applied to reviewing all data, whether fully or partially
- published studies or unpublished data supplied by stakeholders. Care should be
- taken to ensure that multiple reports of the same study are identified and ordered in

- full text to ensure that data extraction is as complete as possible, but study
- 2 participants are not double counted in the analysis.

Published studies

- 4 Titles and abstracts of the retrieved citations should be screened against the
- 5 inclusion criteria defined in the review protocol, and those that do not meet these
- 6 should be excluded. A percentage (at least 10%, but possibly more depending on
- 7 the review question) should be screened independently by 2 reviewers (that is, titles
- 8 and abstracts should be double-screened). The percentage of records to be double-
- 9 screened for each review should be specified in the review protocol.
- 10 If reviewers disagree about a study's relevance, this should be resolved by
- discussion or by recourse to a third reviewer. If, after discussion, there is still doubt
- about whether or not the study meets the inclusion criteria, it should be retained. If
- double-screening is only done on a sample of the retrieved citations (for example,
- 14 10% of references), inter-rater reliability should be assessed against a pre-specified
- threshold (usually 90% agreement, unless another threshold has been agreed and
- documented). If agreement is lower than the pre-specified threshold, the reason
- should be explored and a course of action agreed to ensure a rigorous selection
- process. A further proportion or studies should be double-screened to validate this
- 19 new process until appropriate agreement is achieved. This may involve the first
- 20 reviewer rescreening papers, if the double-screening is done retrospectively rather
- 21 than prospectively.
- 22 Once the screening of titles and abstracts is complete, full versions of the selected
- 23 studies should be obtained for assessment. As with title and abstract screening, a
- 24 percentage of full studies should be checked independently by 2 reviewers, with any
- 25 differences being resolved and additional studies being assessed by multiple
- reviewers if sufficient agreement is not achieved. Studies that fail to meet the
- inclusion criteria once the full version has been checked should be excluded at this
- 28 stage.
- 29 The study selection process should be clearly documented and include full details of
- 30 the inclusion and exclusion criteria. A flow chart should be used to summarise the
- number of papers included and excluded at each stage and this should be presented

- in the evidence review (see the <u>PRISMA statement</u>). Each study excluded after
- 2 checking the full version should be listed, along with the reason for its exclusion.
- 3 Reasons for study exclusion need to be sufficiently detailed (for example,
- 4 'editorial/review' or 'study population did not meet that specified in the review
- 5 protocol').

6 Priority screening

- 7 Priority screening refers to any technique that uses a machine learning algorithm to
- 8 enhance the efficiency of screening. Usually, this involves taking information on
- 9 previously included or excluded papers, and using this to order the unscreened
- papers from most likely to be an included to least likely. This can be used to identify
- a higher proportion of relevant papers earlier in the screening process, or to set a
- cut-off for manual screening, beyond which it is unlikely that additional relevant
- 13 studies will be identified.
- 14 There is currently no published guidance on setting thresholds for stopping
- screening where priority screening has been used. Any methods used should be
- documented in the review protocol and agreed in advance with NICE staff with a
- 17 quality assurance role. Any thresholds set should, at minimum, consider the
- 18 following:
- the number of references identified so far through the search, and how this
- identification rate has changed over the review (for example, how many candidate
- 21 papers were found in each 1,000 screened)
- the overall number of studies expected, which may be based on a previous
- version of the guideline (if it is an update), published systematic reviews, or the
- 24 experience of the guideline committee
- the ratio of relevant/irrelevant records found at the random sampling stage (if
- undertaken) before priority screening.

27 Ensuring relevant records are not missed

- 28 Regardless of the level of double-screening, and whether or not priority screening
- was used, additional checks should always be made to reduce the risk that relevant
- 30 studies are not identified. These should include, at minimum:

- checking reference lists of included systematic reviews, even if these reviews are
- 2 not used as a source of primary data
- checking with the guideline committee that they are not aware of any relevant
- 4 studies that have been missed.
- looking for published papers associated with key trial registry entries or published
- 6 protocols.
- 7 It may be useful to test the sensitivity of the search by checking that it picks up
- 8 known studies of relevance.

9 Conference abstracts

- 10 Conference abstracts seldom contain enough information to allow confident
- judgements about the quality and results of a study, but they may be important in
- 12 interpreting evidence reviews. Conference abstracts should therefore not be
- excluded from the search strategy. But it can be very time consuming to trace the
- original studies or additional data, and the information found may not always be
- useful. If enough evidence has been identified from full published studies, it may be
- reasonable not to trace the original studies or additional data related to conference
- abstracts. But if limited evidence is identified from full published studies, tracing the
- original studies or additional data may be considered, to allow full critical appraisal of
- 19 the data and to make judgements on their inclusion or exclusion from the evidence
- 20 review. The investigators may be contacted if additional information is needed to
- 21 complete the quality assessment.
- 22 Sometimes conference abstracts can be a good source of other information. For
- 23 example, they can point to published studies that have been missed, they can
- indicate how much evidence has not yet been fully published (and so guide calls for
- evidence), and they can identify ongoing studies that are due to be published.

Legislation and policy

- 27 Relevant legislation or policies may be identified in the literature search and used to
- inform guidelines. Legislation and policy does not need quality assessment in the
- same way as other evidence, given the nature of the source. National policy or
- legislation can be quoted verbatim in the guideline (for example, Health and Social
- 31 Care Act [2012]), where needed.

1 Unpublished data and studies in progress

- 2 Any unpublished data should be quality assessed in the same way as published
- 3 studies (see <u>section 6.2</u>). Ideally, if additional information is needed to complete the
- 4 quality assessment, the investigators should be contacted. Similarly, if data from
- 5 studies in progress are included, they should be quality assessed in the same way
- 6 as published studies. The same principles for the use of confidential data should be
- 7 applied (see section 5.5) and, as a minimum, a structured abstract of the study must
- 8 be made available for public disclosure during consultation on the guideline.

9 Grey literature

- 10 Grey literature may be quality assessed in the same way as published literature,
- although because of its nature, such an assessment may be more difficult.
- 12 Consideration should therefore be given to the elements of quality that are most
- 13 likely to be important.

6.2 Assessing quality of evidence: critical appraisal, analysis, and certainty in the findings

16 Introduction

14

15

28

- 17 Assessing the quality of the evidence for a review question is critical. It requires a
- systematic process of assessing potential biases through considering both the
- appropriateness of the study design and the methods of the study (critical appraisal)
- as well as the certainty of the findings (using an approach, such as GRADE).
- 21 Options for assessing the quality of the evidence should be considered by the
- 22 developer. The chosen approach should be discussed and agreed with NICE staff
- with responsibility for quality assurance, where the approach deviates from the
- standard (as described below). The agreed approach should be documented in the
- review protocol (see table 4.1) together with the reasons for the choice. If additional
- information is needed to complete the data extraction or quality assessment, study
- investigators may be contacted.

Critical appraisal of individual studies

- 29 Every study should be appraised using a checklist appropriate for the study design
- 30 (see appendix H for checklists). If a checklist other than those listed is needed or the
- one recommended as first choice is not used, the planned approach should be

- 1 discussed and agreed with NICE staff with responsibility for quality assurance and
- 2 documented in the review protocol.
- 3 Before starting the review, the criteria from the checklist (if not all) that are likely to
- 4 be the most important indicators of biases for the review question should be agreed.
- 5 These criteria will be useful in guiding decisions about the overall risk of bias of each
- 6 individual study.
- 7 Sometimes, a decision might be made to exclude certain studies or to explore any
- 8 impact of bias through sensitivity analysis. If so, the approach should be specified in
- 9 the review protocol and agreed with NICE staff with responsibility for quality
- 10 assurance.
- 11 Criteria relating to key areas of bias may also be useful when summarising and
- presenting the evidence (see <u>section 6.4</u>). Topic-specific input (for example, from
- committee members) may be needed to identify the most appropriate criteria to
- define subgroup analyses, or to define inclusion in a review, for example, the
- minimum biopsy protocol for identifying the relevant population in cancer studies.
- 16 For each criterion which might be explored in sensitivity analysis, the decision on
- whether it has been met or not, and the information used to arrive at the decision,
- should be recorded in a standard template for inclusion in an evidence table (see
- appendix H for examples of evidence tables).
- 20 Each study included in an evidence review should preferably be critically appraised
- by 1 reviewer and checked by another. Any differences in critical appraisal should be
- 22 resolved by discussion or recourse to a third reviewer. Different strategies for critical
- 23 appraisal may be used depending on the topic and the review question.

Data extraction

- 25 Characteristics of data should be extracted to a standard template for inclusion in an
- 26 evidence table (see appendix H). Care should be taken to ensure that newly
- 27 identified studies are cross-checked against existing studies to avoid double-
- counting. This is particularly important where there may be multiple reports of the
- 29 same study.

1 Analysing and presenting results for studies of interventions

- 2 Meta-analysis may be appropriate if treatment estimates of the same outcome from
- 3 more than 1 study are available. Recognised approaches to meta-analysis should be
- 4 used, as described in the manual from <u>Cochrane</u>, the <u>Centre for Reviews and</u>
- 5 Dissemination (2009), in Higgins and Green (2011) and documents developed by the
- 6 NICE Technical Support Unit.
- 7 There are several ways of summarising and illustrating the strength and direction of
- 8 quantitative evidence about the effectiveness of an intervention if a meta-analysis is
- 9 not done. Forest plots can be used to show effect estimates and confidence intervals
- for each study (when available, or when it is possible to calculate them). They can
- also be used to provide a graphical representation when it is not appropriate to do a
- meta-analysis and present a pooled estimate. However, the homogeneity of the
- outcomes and measures in the studies needs to be carefully considered: a forest plot
- needs data derived from the same (or justifiably similar) outcomes and measures.
- Head-to-head data that compares the effectiveness of interventions is useful for a
- 16 comparison between two active management options. Comparative studies are
- usually combined in a meta-analysis where appropriate. A network meta-analysis is
- an analysis that can include trials that compare the interventions of interest
- 19 head-to-head and also trials that allow an indirect comparison via a common third
- 20 intervention.
- 21 The same principles of good practice for evidence reviews and meta-analyses
- should be applied when conducting network meta-analyses. The reasons for
- 23 identifying and selecting the RCTs should be explained, including the reasons for
- 24 selecting the treatment comparisons. The methods of synthesis should be described
- clearly in the methods section of the evidence review.
- When multiple options are being appraised, a network meta-analysis should be
- 27 considered. The data from individual trials should also be documented (usually as an
- appendix). If there is doubt about the inclusion of particular trials (for example,
- because of concerns about limitations or applicability), a sensitivity analysis in which
- these trials are excluded should also be presented. The level of consistency between
- the direct and indirect evidence on the interventions should be reported, including

- 1 consideration of model fit and comparison statistics such as the total residual
- deviance, and the deviance information criterion (DIC). Results of further
- 3 inconsistency tests, such as those based on node-splitting, should also be reported,
- 4 if available. Results from direct comparisons may also be presented within network
- 5 meta-analyses to help validate the overall effect sizes obtained.
- When evidence is combined using indirect or network meta-analyses, trial
- 7 randomisation should typically be preserved. If this is not appropriate, the planned
- 8 approach should be discussed and agreed with NICE staff with responsibility for
- 9 quality assurance. A comparison of the results from single treatment arms from
- different RCTs is not acceptable unless the data are treated as observational and
- appropriate steps are taken to adjust for possible bias and increased uncertainty.
- 12 Further information on complex methods for evidence synthesis is provided by the
- documents developed by the NICE Technical Support Unit.
- 14 To promote transparency of health research reporting (as endorsed by the
- 15 EQUATOR network), evidence from a network meta-analysis should usually be
- reported according to the criteria in the modified PRISMA-NMA checklist in appendix
- 17 K.
- 18 Evidence from a network meta-analysis can be presented in a variety of ways. The
- 19 network should be presented diagrammatically with the direct and indirect treatment
- comparisons clearly identified and the number of trials in each comparison stated.
- 21 Further information on how to present the results of network meta-analyses is
- 22 provided by the <u>documents</u> developed by the NICE Technical Support Unit.
- 23 There are a number of approaches for assessing the quality or confidence in outputs
- derived from network meta-analysis have recently been published (Phillippo et al.
- 25 2017, Caldwell et al. 2016, Purhan et al. 2014, Salanti et al. 2014). The strengths
- and limitations of these approaches and their application to guideline development
- are currently being assessed.
- 28 Analysing and presenting results of studies of diagnostic test accuracy
- 29 Information on methods of presenting and synthesising results from studies of
- diagnostic test accuracy is being developed (http://srdta.cochrane.org and

- 1 <u>www.gradeworkinggroup.org</u>). The quality of the evidence should be based on the
- 2 critical appraisal criteria from QUADAS-2 (see appendix H). If meta-analysis is not
- possible or appropriate, there should be a narrative summary of the results that were
- 4 considered most important for the review question.
- 5 Evidence on diagnostic test accuracy may be summarised in tables or presented as
- 6 Receiver Operating Characteristic curves (**ROC curves**). Meta-analysis of results
- 7 from a number of diagnostic accuracy studies can be complex and relevant
- 8 published technical advice (such as that from Cochrane) should be used to guide
- 9 reviewers.

10 Analysing and presenting results of studies of prognosis or clinical prediction

11 models

- 12 There is currently no general consensus on approaches for synthesising evidence
- from studies on prognosis or prediction models. A narrative summary of the quality of
- the evidence should be given, based on the quality appraisal criteria from the quality
- assessment tool used (for example, PROBAST [for clinical prediction models], or
- 16 QUIPS [for simple correlation/univariate regression analyses]), see appendix H.
- 17 Characteristics of data should be extracted to a standard template for inclusion in an
- evidence table (see appendix H). Methods for presenting syntheses of evidence on
- 19 prognosis and prediction models are being developed
- 20 (www.gradeworkinggroup.org).
- 21 Results may be presented as tables. Reviewers should be wary of using
- 22 meta-analysis to summarise results unless the same factor has been examined
- 23 across all studies and the same outcome measured. It is important to explore
- whether all likely confounding factors have been accounted for, and whether the
- 25 metrics used to measure exposure (or outcome) are universal. When studies cannot
- be pooled, results should be presented consistently across studies (for example, the
- 27 median and ranges of predictive values). For more information on prognostic
- reviews, see Collins 2015 and Moons 2015

29 Analysing and presenting results of qualitative evidence

- 30 Qualitative evidence occurs in many forms and formats and so different methods
- may be used for synthesis and presentation (such as those described by Cochrane).

- 1 As with all data synthesis it is important that the method used to evaluate the
- 2 evidence is easy to follow. It should be written up in clear English and any analytical
- decisions should be clearly justified. The quality of the evidence should be based on
- 4 the critical appraisal criteria from the Critical Appraisal Skills Programme (CASP; see
- 5 appendix H).
- 6 In most cases, the evidence should be synthesised and then summarised in
- 7 GRADE-CERQual. If synthesis of the evidence is not appropriate, a narrative
- 8 summary may be adequate; this should be agreed with NICE staff with responsibility
- 9 for quality assurance. The approach used depends on the volume and consistency
- of the evidence. If the qualitative evidence is extensive, then a recognised method of
- synthesis is preferable. If the evidence is more disparate and sparse, a narrative
- 12 summary may be appropriate.
- 13 The simplest approach to presenting qualitative data in a meaningful way is to
- analyse the themes (or 'meta' themes) in the evidence tables and write second level
- themes based on them. This 'second level' thematic analysis can be carried out if
- enough data are found, and the papers and research reports cover the same (or
- similar) factors or use similar methods. (These should be relevant to the review
- questions and could, for example, include intervention, age, population or setting.)
- 19 Synthesis can be carried out in a number of ways, and each may be appropriate
- depending on the question type, and the evidence identified. Papers reporting on the
- 21 same factors can be grouped together to compare and contrast themes, focusing not
- just on consistency but also on any differences. The narrative should be based on
- these themes.
- A more complex but useful approach is 'conceptual mapping' (see Johnson et al.
- 25 2000). This involves identifying the key themes and concepts across all the evidence
- tables and grouping them into first level (major), second level (associated) and third
- level (subthemes) themes. Results are presented in schematic form as a conceptual
- diagram and the narrative is based on the structure of the diagram.
- 29 Alternatively, themes can be identified and extracted directly from the data, using a
- grounded approach (Glaser and Strauss 1967). Other potential techniques include

- 1 meta-ethnography (Noblit and Hare 1988) and meta-synthesis (Barroso and
- 2 Powell-Cope 2000), but expertise in their use is needed.

3 Certainty or confidence in the findings of analysis

- 4 The certainty or confidence in the findings should be presented at outcome level
- 5 using GRADE or GRADE-CERQual (for individual or synthesised studies). If this is
- 6 not appropriate, the planned approach should be discussed and agreed with NICE
- 7 staff with responsibility for quality assurance. It should be documented in the review
- 8 protocol (see <u>table 4.1</u>) together with the reasons for the choice.

9 Certainty or confidence in the findings by outcome

- Before starting an evidence review, the outcomes of interest which are either 'critical'
- or 'important' to people using services and the public for the purpose of
- decision-making should be identified. The reasons for prioritising outcomes should
- be documented in the evidence review. This should be done before starting the
- evidence review and clearly separated from discussion of the evidence, because
- there is potential to introduce bias if outcomes are selected when the results are
- known. An example of this would be choosing only outcomes for which there were
- 17 statistically significant results.
- 18 The committee discussion section should also explain how the importance of
- outcomes was considered when discussing the evidence. For example, the
- 20 committee may have found evidence on important outcomes but none on critical
- 21 outcomes. The impact of this on the final recommendation should be clear.
- 22 GRADE and GRADE-CERQual assess the certainty or confidence in the review
- findings by looking at features of the evidence found for each 'critical' and 'important'
- outcome or theme. GRADE is summarised in box 6.2, and GRADE-CERQual in box
- 25 6.3.
- 26 Box 6.2 GRADE approach to assessing the certainty of evidence for
- 27 intervention studies

GRADE assesses the following features for the evidence found for each 'critical' and each 'important' outcome:

- study limitations (risk of bias) the internal validity of the evidence
- inconsistency the heterogeneity or variability in the estimates of treatment effect across studies
- indirectness the extent of differences between the population, intervention, comparator for the intervention and outcome of interest across studies
- imprecision the extent to which confidence in the effect estimate is adequate to support a particular decision
- Other considerations publication bias, the degree of selective publication of studies

2 Box 6.3 GRADE-CERQual approach to assessing the confidence of evidence

3 for qualitative studies

1

4

GRADE-CERQual assesses the following features for the evidence found for each 'critical' and each 'important' outcome or finding:

- methodological limitations the internal validity of the evidence
- relevance the extent to which the evidence is applicable to the context in the review question
- coherence the extent of the similarities and differences within the evidence
- adequacy of data the extent of richness and quantity of the evidence
- 5 The certainty or confidence of evidence is classified as high, moderate, low or very
- 6 low. In the context of NICE guidelines, it can be interpreted as follows:
- 7 **High** further research is very unlikely to change our decision.
- Moderate further research is likely to have an important impact on our
- 9 confidence in the estimate of effect and may change the strength of our
- 10 recommendation.
- **Low** further research is very likely to have an important impact on our
- confidence in the estimate of effect and is likely to change the
- decision/recommendation.
- **Very low** any estimate of effect is very uncertain and further research will
- probably change the recommendation.
- 16 The approach taken by NICE differs from the standard GRADE and GRADE-
- 17 CERQual system in 2 ways:
- it also integrates a review of the quality of cost-effectiveness studies (see chapter
- 19 7)

- it does not use 'overall summary' labels for the quality of the evidence across all
- 2 outcomes or for the strength of a recommendation, but uses the wording of
- recommendations to reflect the strength of the evidence (see chapter 9).
- 4 In addition, although GRADE does not yet cover all types of review questions,
- 5 GRADE principles can be applied and adapted to other types of questions. The
- 6 GRADE Working Group continues to refine existing approaches and to develop new
- 7 approaches. Developers should check the GRADE website for any new guidance or
- 8 systems when developing the review protocol. Any substantial changes, made by the
- 9 developer, to GRADE as described on the website should be agreed with NICE staff
- with responsibility for quality assurance before use.
- 11 GRADE or GRADE-CERQual tables summarise the certainty in the evidence and
- data for each critical and each important outcome or theme and include a limited
- description of the certainty in the evidence. GRADE or GRADE-CERQual tables
- should be available (for example, in an appendix) for each review question(s)...

15 **6.3 Equality and diversity considerations**

- NICE's equality and diversity duties are expressed in a single public sector equality
- duty ('the equality duty' see section 1.4). The equality duty supports good
- decision-making by encouraging public bodies to understand how different people
- will be affected by their activities. For NICE, much of whose work involves
- developing advice for others on what to do, this includes thinking about how people
- will be affected by its recommendations when these are implemented (for example,
- 22 by health and social care practitioners).
- 23 In addition to meeting its legal obligations, NICE is committed to going beyond
- compliance, particularly in terms of tackling health inequalities. Specifically, NICE
- 25 considers that it should also take account of socioeconomic status in its equality
- 26 considerations.

27 Ensuring inclusivity of the evidence review criteria

- 28 Any equalities criteria specified in the review protocol should be included in the
- 29 evidence tables. At the data extraction stage, reviewers should refer to the
- 30 PROGRESS-Plus criteria (including age, sex, sexual orientation, disability, ethnicity,

- 1 religion, place of residence, occupation, education, socioeconomic position and
- 2 social capital; Gough et al. 2012) and any other relevant protected characteristics,
- and record these where reported, as specified in the review protocol. Review
- 4 inclusion and exclusion criteria should also take the relevant groups into account, as
- 5 specified in the review protocol.
- 6 Equalities should be considered during the drafting of the reviews. Equality
- 7 considerations should be included in the data extraction process and should be
- 8 recorded in the committee discussion section if they were important for decision-
- 9 making.

10 **6.4 Summarising evidence**

11 Presenting evidence

- 12 The following sections should be included in the evidence review:
- an introduction to the evidence review
- summary of the evidence identified, in either table or narrative format
- evidence tables (usually presented in an appendix)
- full GRADE or GRADE-CERQual profiles (in an appendix)
- evidence statements (if GRADE [or a modified GRADE approach], or GRADE-
- 18 CERQual is not used)
- other analysis of evidence (usually presented in an appendix).
- The evidence should usually be presented separately for each review question;
- 21 however, alternative methods of presentation may be needed for some evidence
- reviews (for example, where review questions are closely linked and need to be
- interpreted together). In these cases, the principles of quality assessment, and data
- 24 extraction and presentation should still apply.
- 25 Any substantial deviations in presentation need to be agreed, in advance, with NICE
- staff with responsibility for quality assurance.

27 Summary of the evidence

- A summary of the evidence identified should be produced. The content of this
- summary will depend on the type of question and the type of evidence. It should also
- identify and describe any gaps in the evidence.

- 1 Short summaries of the evidence should be included with the main findings. For
- 2 example, these might:
- summarise the volume of information gleaned for the review question(s), that is,
- 4 the number of studies identified, included, and excluded (with a link to a PRISMA
- 5 selection flowchart, usually in an appendix)
- summarise the study types, populations, interventions, settings or outcomes for
- 7 each study related to a particular review question.

8 Evidence tables

- 9 Evidence tables help to identify the similarities and differences between studies,
- including the key characteristics of the study population and interventions or
- outcome measures. This provides a basis for comparison.
- Data from identified studies are extracted to standard templates for inclusion in
- evidence tables. The type of data and study information that should be included
- depends on the type of study and review question, and should be concise and
- consistently reported. Appendix H contains examples of evidence tables for
- quantitative studies (both experimental and observational).
- 17 The types of information that could be included are:
- bibliography (authors, date)
- study aim, study design (for example, randomised controlled trial, case–control
- study) and setting (for example, country)
- funding details (if known)
- population (for example, source, and eligibility)
- intervention, if applicable (for example, content, who delivers the intervention,
- 24 duration, method, dose, mode or timing of delivery)
- comparator, if applicable (for example, content, who delivers the intervention,
- 26 duration, method, dose, mode or timing of delivery)
- method of allocation to study groups (if applicable)
- outcomes (for example, primary and secondary and whether measures were
- objective, subjective or otherwise validated)

- key findings (for example, effect sizes, confidence intervals, for all relevant
- 2 outcomes, and where appropriate, other information such as numbers needed to
- treat and considerations of heterogeneity if summarising a systematic
- 4 review/meta-analysis)
- inadequately reported data, missing data or if data have been imputed (include
- 6 method of imputation or if transformation is used)
- overall comments on quality, based on the critical appraisal and what checklist
- 8 was used to make this assessment.
- 9 If data are not being used in any further statistical analysis, or reported in GRADE
- tables, effect sizes (point estimate) with confidence intervals should be reported, or
- back calculated from the published evidence where possible. If confidence intervals
- are not reported, exact p values (whether or not significant), with the test from which
- they were obtained, should be included. When confidence intervals or p values are
- inadequately reported or not given, this should be stated. Any descriptive statistics
- 15 (including any mean values and degree of spread such as ranges) indicating the
- direction of the difference between intervention and comparator should be
- presented. If no further statistical information is available, this should be clearly
- 18 stated.
- 19 The assessment of potential biases should also be presented. When study details
- are inadequately reported, or absent, this should be clearly stated.
- 21 The type of data that should be included in evidence tables for qualitative studies is
- shown in the example in appendix H. This could include:
- bibliography (authors, date)
- study aim, study design and setting (for example, country)
- funding details (if known)
- population or participants
- theoretical perspective adopted (such as grounded theory)
- key aims, objectives and research questions; methods (including analytical and
- 29 data collection technique)
- key themes/findings (including quotes from participants that illustrate these
- 31 themes/findings, if appropriate)

- gaps and limitations
- overall comments on quality, based on the critical appraisal and what checklist
- 3 was used to make this assessment.

4 Evidence statements

- 5 Full GRADE or GRADE CERQual tables that present both the results of the analysis
- 6 and describe the confidence in the evidence should normally be provided (usually as
- 7 an appendix).
- 8 If GRADE or GRADE-CERQual is not appropriate for the evidence review, evidence
- 9 statements should be included. Examples of where evidence statements may be
- 10 needed are review questions covering prognosis/ clinical prediction models (where
- data cannot be pooled), review questions covering service delivery, or where formal
- consensus approaches have been taken to answer a review question.
- 13 Evidence statements should provide an aggregated summary of all of the relevant
- studies or analyses, regardless of their findings. They should reflect the balance of
- the evidence, and its strength (quality, quantity and consistency, and applicability).
- 16 Evidence statements should summarise key aspects of the evidence but should also
- 17 highlight where there is a lack of evidence (note that this is different to evidence for a
- 18 lack of effect).
- 19 Evidence statements are structured and written to help committees formulate and
- 20 prioritise recommendations. They help committees decide:
- whether or not there is sufficient evidence (in terms of strength and applicability)
- to form a judgement
- whether (on balance) the evidence demonstrates that an intervention, approach or
- 24 programme is effective, ineffective, or is inconclusive
- the size of effect and associated measure of uncertainty
- whether the evidence is applicable to people affected by the guideline and
- contexts covered by the guideline.

Structure and content of evidence statements

- 2 One or more evidence statements are prepared for each review question or
- 3 subsidiary question. (Subsidiary questions may cover a type of intervention, specific
- 4 population groups, a setting or an outcome.)
- 5 Each evidence statement should stand alone as an accessible, clear summary of
- 6 key information used to support the recommendations (see section 9.1). The
- 7 guideline should ensure that the relationship between the recommendations and the
- 8 supporting evidence statements is clear.
- 9 Evidence statements should identify the sources of evidence and their quality in brief
- descriptive terms and not just by symbols. Each statement should also include
- 11 summary information about the:
- content of the intervention, management strategy (for example, what, how,
- where?) and comparison, or factor of interest
- population(s), number of people analysed, and setting(s) (for example, country)
- outcome(s), the direction of effect (or correlation) and the size of effect (or
- 16 correlation) if applicable
- strength of evidence (reflecting the appropriateness of the study design to answer
- the question and the quality, quantity and consistency of evidence)
- applicability to the question, people affected by the guideline and setting (see
- 20 <u>section 6.3</u>).

- Note that the strength of the evidence is reported separately to the direction and size
- of the effects or correlations observed.
- 23 Where important, the evidence statement should also summarise information about:
- whether the intervention has been delivered as it should be (fidelity of the
- 25 intervention)
- what affects the intervention achieving the outcome (mechanism of action).
- 27 An evidence statement indicating where no evidence is identified for a critical or
- important outcome should be included.

1 Terminology of evidence statements

- 2 A set of standardised terms for describing the strength of the evidence is given in
- 3 box 6.4. However, the evidence base for each review may vary, so the developer
- 4 should define how these terms have been used.

5 Box 6.4 Examples of standardised terms for describing the strength of the

6 evidence

No evidence¹ 'No evidence was found from English-language trials published since 1990...".

Weak evidence 'There was weak evidence from 1 controlled before and after studies.

Moderate evidence 'There was moderate evidence from 2 controlled before and after studies'.

Strong evidence 'There was strong evidence from 2 controlled before and after studies and 1 controlled before and after studies.

Inconsistent evidence 'The quality of the evidence is mixed'.

Further commentary may be needed on the variability of findings in different studies. For example, when the quality of studies reporting the same outcome varies. In such cases, the review team may qualify an evidence statement with an explanatory sentence or section that gives more detail.

¹ Note that no evidence is not the same as evidence of no effect.

- 8 The terms should not be used to describe other aspects of the evidence, such as
- 9 applicability or size of effect (see below for suitable terminology).
- 10 'Vote counting' (merely reporting on the number of studies) is not an acceptable
- 11 summary of the evidence.
- 12 If appropriate, the direction of effect (impact) or association should be summarised
- using 1 of the following terms:
- 14 positive
- 15 negative
- 16 mixed
- 17 none.
- However, appropriate context/topic-specific terms (for example, 'an increase in HIV
- incidence', 'a reduction in injecting drug use' and 'smoking cessation') may be used.

- 1 These terms should be used consistently in each review and their definitions should
- 2 be reported in the methods section.

3 Evidence statements for quantitative evidence

- 4 An example of an evidence statement from a prognostic review is given in box 6.5.
- 5 The example has been adapted from the original and is for illustrative purposes only:

6 Box 6.5 Example of an evidence statement from a prognostic review

Association between communication and contraceptive use

There is moderate evidence from 3 UK cross-sectional studies 1,2 3 , n=254) about the correlation between young people's communication skills around safer sex and a reduction in the number of teenage pregnancies. The evidence about the strength of this correlation is mixed. One study¹ found that discussing condom use with new partners was associated with actual condom use at first sex (OR 2.67 [95% CI 1.55–4.57]). Another study³ found that not talking to a partner about protection before first sexual intercourse was associated with teenage pregnancy (OR 1.67 [1.03–2.72]). And, another study² found small correlations between condom use, discussions about safer sex (r=0.072, p<0.01) and communication skills (r=0.204, p<0.01).

OR, odds ratio; CI, confidence interval.

7

8

Evidence statements for qualitative evidence

- 9 Evidence statements of qualitative studies or synthesis of qualitative studies do not
- usually report the impact of an intervention on behaviour or outcomes, and do not
- report statistical effects or aggregate measures of strength and effect size. Instead
- statements should summarise the evidence, its context and quality, and the
- 13 consistency of key findings and themes across studies (meta-themes). Areas where
- there is little (or no) coherence should also be summarised. An example of an
- evidence statement developed from qualitative data is given in box 6.6.

16 Box 6.6 Example of an evidence statement developed from qualitative data

¹ Kettle et al. 2007.

² Jarrett et al. 2007.

³ Morgan et al. 2000.

Association between education and childcare

Two UK studies ^{1 2}, and 1 Dutch study³ (n=542) reported the views of teenage mothers. In 1 study¹ of mothers interviewed in a family planning clinic and 1 study² of mothers' responses to a questionnaire at their GP surgery, the participants agreed that access to education was the thing that helped them most after they had their child. However, this was not reported as a key theme in the Dutch study³ of health visitor perceptions of teenage mothers' needs.

1

2 6.5 References and further reading

- 3 AGREE Collaboration (2003) <u>Development and validation of an international</u>
- 4 appraisal instrument for assessing the quality of clinical practice guidelines: the
- 5 AGREE project. Quality and Safety in Health Care 12: 18–23
- 6 Altman DG (2001) Systematic reviews of evaluations of prognostic variables. British
- 7 Medical Journal 323: 224–8
- 8 Barroso J, Powell-Cope GM (2000) Meta-synthesis of qualitative research on living
- 9 with HIV infection. Qualitative Health Research 10: 340–53
- 10 Brouwers M, Kho ME, Browman GP et al. for the AGREE Next Steps Consortium
- 11 (2010) AGREE II: advancing guideline development, reporting and evaluation in
- healthcare. Canadian Medical Association Journal 182: E839–42
- 13 Caldwell DM, Ades AE, Dias S et al (2016) A threshold analysis assessed the
- credibility of conclusions from network meta-analysis. J. Clin. Epidemiol. 80: 68-76
- 15 Centre for Reviews and Dissemination (2009) Systematic reviews: CRD's guidance
- for undertaking reviews in health care. University of York: Centre for Reviews and
- 17 Dissemination
- 18 Collins GS, Reistma JB, Altman DG et. Al. (2015) Transparent Reporting of a
- 19 multivariable prediction model for Individual Prognosis Or Diagnosis (TRIPOD): The
- 20 TRIPOD Statement. Annals of Internal Medicine 162(1): 55-63

¹ Ellis 1999

² Swann 2000

³ Nolan 2004.

- 1 Egger M, Davey Smith G, Altman DG (2000) Systematic reviews in health care:
- 2 meta-analysis in context. London: British Medical Journal Books
- 3 Glaser BG, Strauss AL (1967) The discovery of grounded theory: strategies for
- 4 qualitative research. New York: Aldine de Gruyter
- 5 Gough D, Oliver S, Thomas J, editors (2012) An introduction to systematic reviews.
- 6 London: Sage
- 7 GRADE Working Group (2004) Grading quality of evidence and strength of
- 8 recommendations. British Medical Journal 328: 1490–4
- 9 Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Schünemann HJ et al. (2011) GRADE guidelines: a new
- series of articles in the Journal of Clinical Epidemiology. Journal of Clinical
- 11 Epidemiology 64: 380–2
- Harbord RM, Deeks JJ, Egger M et al. (2007) A unification of models for
- meta-analysis of diagnostic accuracy studies. Biostatistics 8: 239–51
- 14 Higgins JPT, Green S, editors (2011) Cochrane handbook for systematic reviews of
- 15 <u>interventions. Version 5.1.0</u> (updated March 2011)
- Johnson JA, Biegel DE, Shafran R (2000) Concept mapping in mental health: uses
- and adaptations. Evaluation and Programme Planning 23: 67–75
- 18 Moons KG, Altman DG, Reistma JB et al. (2015) Transparent Reporting of a
- 19 <u>multivariable prediction model for Individual Prognosis Or Diagnosis (TRIPOD):</u>
- 20 Explanation and Elaboration. Annals of Internal Medicine 126(1): W1-W73
- 21 NICE Decision Support Unit Evidence synthesis TSD series [online; accessed 19
- 22 February 2018]
- Noblit G, Hare RD (1988) Meta-ethnography: synthesising qualitative studies.
- 24 London: Sage
- 25 Phillippo DM, Dias S, Ades AE et al. (2017) Sensitivity of treatment
- 26 recommendations to bias in network meta-analysis. Journal of the Royal Statistical
- 27 Society A

- 1 Puhan MA, Schünemann HJ, Murad MH et al. (2014) A GRADE Working Group
- 2 approach for rating the quality of treatment effect estimates from network meta-
- 3 <u>analysis</u>. British Medical Journal 349: g5630.
- 4 Ring N, Jepson R and Ritchie K (2011) Methods of synthesizing qualitative research
- 5 <u>studies for health technology assessment</u>. International Journal of Technology
- 6 Assessment in Health Care 27: 384–390
- 7 Salanti G, Del Giovane C, Chaimani A et al. (2014) Evaluating the quality of
- 8 <u>evidence from a network meta-analysis</u>. PloS one. 9(7): e99682.
- 9 Tugwell P, Pettigrew M, Kristjansson E et al. (2010) Assessing equity in systematic
- 10 reviews: realising the recommendations of the Commission on the Social
- 11 Determinants of Health. British Medical Journal 341: 4739
- 12 Turner RM, Spiegelhalter DJ, Smith GC et al. (2009) Bias modelling in evidence
- 13 <u>synthesis</u>. Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series A (Statistics in Society)
- 14 **172**: **21–47**
- Whiting PF, Rutjes AWS, Westwood ME et al. and the QUADAS-2 group (2011)
- 16 QUADAS-2: a revised tool for the quality assessment of diagnostic accuracy studies.
- 17 Annals of Internal Medicine 155: 529–36

7 Incorporating economic evaluation

7.1 Introduction

1

2

12

- 3 This chapter describes the role of economics in developing NICE guidelines, and
- 4 suggests possible approaches to use when considering economic evidence. It also
- 5 sets out the principles for conducting new economic modelling if there is insufficient
- 6 published evidence that can be used to assess the cost effectiveness of key
- 7 interventions, services or programmes.
- 8 It should be noted that significant methodological developments in this area are
- 9 anticipated, and this manual will be updated in response to these. Developments in
- methodology for considering the economic aspects of delivering services will also be
- 11 taken into account.

7.2 The role of economics in guideline development

- 13 Economic evaluation compares the costs and consequences of alternative courses
- of action. Formally assessing the cost effectiveness of an intervention, service or
- programme can help decision-makers ensure that maximum gain is achieved from
- limited resources. If resources are used for interventions or services that are not cost
- effective, the population as a whole gains fewer benefits.
- 18 It is particularly important for committee members to understand that economic
- analysis is not only about estimating the resource consequences of a guideline
- 20 recommendation, but is concerned with evaluating costs in relation to benefits
- 21 (including benefits to quality of life) and harm of alternative courses of action. NICE's
- 22 principles on social value judgements (see the entry on social value judgements in
- 23 our glossary) usually take precedence over economics.
- 24 Guideline recommendations should be based on the balance between the estimated
- 25 costs of the interventions or services and their expected benefits compared with an
- alternative (that is, their 'cost effectiveness'). However, the cost impact or savings
- 27 potential of a recommendation should not be the sole reason for the committee's
- decision. In general, the committee should be increasingly certain of the cost
- 29 effectiveness of a recommendation as the cost of implementation increases.
- Therefore, the committee may require more robust evidence on the effectiveness

- and cost effectiveness of recommendations that are expected to have a substantial
- 2 impact on resources. Economic analysis must be done when there is no robust
- 3 evidence of cost effectiveness to support these recommendations. Any uncertainties
- 4 must be offset by a compelling argument in favour of the recommendation. However,
- 5 the cost impact or savings potential of a recommendation should not be the sole
- 6 reason for the Committee's decision.
- 7 Resource impact is considered in terms of the additional cost above that of current
- 8 practice for each of the first 5 years of implementing the guideline. Resource impact
- 9 is defined as substantial if:
- implementing a single guideline recommendation in England costs more than
 £1 million per year or
- implementing the whole guideline in England costs more than £5 million per year.
- 13 The aim is to ensure that the guideline does not introduce a cost pressure into the
- 14 health and social care system unless the committee is convinced of the benefits and
- 15 cost effectiveness of the recommendations.
- Defining the priorities for economic evaluation should start during scoping of the
- guideline, and should continue when the review questions are being developed.
- 18 Questions on economic issues mirror the review questions on effectiveness, but with
- 19 a focus on cost effectiveness. Economic evaluation typically involves 2 stages. The
- 20 first is a literature review of published evidence to determine whether the review
- 21 questions set out in the scope have already been assessed by economic
- 22 evaluations. Reviews of economic evidence identify, present and appraise data from
- 23 studies of cost effectiveness. They may be considered as part of each review
- 24 question undertaken for a guideline. If existing economic evidence is inadequate or
- inconclusive for 1 or more review questions, then the second stage may involve a
- variety of economic modelling techniques such as adapting existing economic
- 27 models or building new bespoke models from existing data.
- 28 Reviews of economic evidence and any economic modelling are quality assured by
- the developer and a member of NICE staff with responsibility for quality assurance.
- The nature of the quality assurance will depend on the type of economic evaluation,

- but will consider the evaluation in terms of the appropriate reference case and be
- 2 based on a methodology checklist (for example, those in appendix H).

7.3 The reference case

- 4 A guideline may consider a range of interventions, commissioned by various
- organisations and resulting in different types of benefits (outcomes). It is crucial that
- 6 reviews of economic evidence and economic evaluations undertaken to inform
- 7 guideline development adopt a consistent approach depending on the type of
- 8 interventions assessed. The 'reference case' specifies the methods considered
- 9 consistent with the objective of maximising benefits from limited resources. NICE is
- interested in benefits to patients (for interventions with health outcomes in NHS and
- personal social services [PSS] settings), to individuals and community groups (for
- interventions with health and non-health outcomes in public sector settings) and to
- people using services and their carers (for interventions with a social care focus).
- 14 Choosing the most appropriate reference case depends on whether or not the
- 15 interventions undergoing evaluation:
- are commissioned by the NHS and PSS alone or by any other public sector body
- focus on social care outcomes.
- 18 The reference case chosen should be agreed for each decision problem (relevant to
- 19 a review question), should be set out briefly in the scope and detailed in the
- 20 economic plan. A guideline may use a different reference case for different decision
- 21 problems if appropriate (for example, if a guideline reviews interventions with
- 22 non-health- and/or social care-related outcomes).
- 23 Table 7.1 summarises the reference case according to the interventions being
- 24 evaluated.

1 Table 7.1 Summary of the reference case

Element of assessment	Interventions funded by the NHS and PSS with health outcomes	Interventions funded by the public sector with health and non-health outcomes	Interventions funded by the public sector with a social care focus		
Defining the decision problem	The scope developed by NICE				
Comparator	Interventions routinely used in the NHS, including those regarded as current best practice.	Interventions routinely used in the public sector, including those regarded as best practice.	Interventions routinely delivered by the public and non-public social care sector ¹ .		
Perspective on	NHS and PSS. For		ector – often reducing to local		
costs	PSS include only care that is funded	government. Societal perspective (where appropriate).			
	by NHS (such as 'continuing healthcare' or 'funded nursing care').	Other (where appropriate); for example, employer.			
Perspective on outcomes	All direct health effects, whether for people using services or, when relevant, other people (principally family members or informal carers).	All health effects on individuals. For local government and other settings, where appropriate, non-health effects may also be included.	Effects on people for whom services are delivered (people using services and/or carers).		
Type of economic	Cost-utility analysis.	Cost–utility analysis_(base case).			
evaluation		Cost-effectiveness analysis.			
		Cost honefit analysis.			
		Cost–benefit analysis. Cost-minimisation analysis.			
Synthesis of evidence on outcomes	Based on a systematic review.				
Time horizon	Long enough to reflect all important differences in costs or outcomes between the interventions being compared.				
Measuring and valuing health effects	QALYs ² : the EQ-5D ³ is the preferred measure of health-related quality of life in adults.				

Element of assessment	Interventions funded by the NHS and PSS with health outcomes	Interventions funded by the public sector with health and non-health outcomes	Interventions funded by the public sector with a social care focus		
Measure of non-health effects	Not applicable.	Where appropriate, to be decided on a case-by-case basis.	Capability or social care-related quality of life measures where an intervention results in both health and capability or social care outcomes.		
Source of data for measurement of quality of life	Reported directly by people using service and/or carers.				
Source of preference data for valuation of changes in health-related quality of life	Representative sample of the UK population.				
Discounting	The same annual rate for both costs and health effects (currently 3.5%). Sensitivity analyses using rates of 1.5% for both costs and health effects may be presented alongside the reference-case analysis, particularly for public health interventions.				
In certain cases, cost-effectiveness analyses are very ser the discount rate used. In this circumstance, analyses tha non-reference-case discount rate for costs and outcomes considered. Equity A QALY has the same weight regardless of the other characteristics.					
considerations: QALYs	A QALY has the same weight regardless of the other characteristics of the people receiving the health benefit.				
Equity considerations: other	Equity considerations relevant to specific topics, and how these were addressed in economic evaluation, must be reported.				
Evidence on resource use and costs	Costs should relate to the perspective used and should be valued using the prices relevant to that perspective. Costs borne by people using services and the value of unpaid care may also be included if they contribute to outcomes.				

Element of	Interventions	Interventions	Interventions
assessment	funded by the NHS and PSS with health outcomes	funded by the public sector with health and non-health outcomes	funded by the public sector with a social care focus

¹ Social care costs are the costs of interventions which have been commissioned or paid for in full, or in part by non-NHS organisations.

Interventions funded by the NHS and PSS with health outcomes

- 3 For decision problems where the intervention evaluated is solely commissioned by
- 4 the NHS and does not have a clear focus on non-health outcomes, the reference
- 5 case for 'interventions funded by the NHS and PSS with health outcomes should be
- 6 chosen.

- 7 More details on methods of economic evaluation for interventions with health
- 8 outcomes in NHS and PSS settings can be found in NICE's <u>Guide to the methods of</u>
- 9 <u>technology appraisal 2013</u>. This includes a reference case, which specifies the
- methods considered by NICE to be the most appropriate for analysis when
- developing technology appraisal guidance. The reference case is consistent with the
- 12 NHS objective of maximising health gain from limited resources.
- All relevant NHS and PSS costs that change as a result of an intervention should be
- taken into account. Important non-NHS and PSS costs should also be identified and
- 15 considered for inclusion in sensitivity analysis, or to aid decision-making. These may
- include costs to other central government departments and local government.
- 17 Service recommendations are likely to have additional costs, which include
- implementation costs not usually included in the analysis and costs to other
- 19 government budgets, such as social care. Implementation costs should be included
- in a sensitivity analysis, where relevant, while costs to other government budgets
- can be presented in a separate analysis to the base case.
- 22 Productivity costs and costs borne by people using services and carers that are not
- 23 reimbursed by the NHS or personal social services should usually be excluded from

² Quality-adjusted life years.

³ See NICE position statement on the EQ-5D-5L

- any analyses (see the <u>Guide to the methods of technology appraisal 2013</u>). That is,
- 2 a societal perspective will not normally be used.
- 3 Interventions funded by the public sector with health and non-health outcomes
- 4 For decision problems where the interventions evaluated are commissioned in full or
- 5 in part by non-NHS public sector and other bodies, the reference case for
- 6 'interventions funded by the public sector with health and non-health outcomes'
- 5 should be chosen. For the base-case analysis, a cost—utility analysis should be done
- 8 using a cost per QALY (quality-adjusted life year) where possible.
- 9 This reference case may be most appropriate for public health interventions paid for
- by an arm of government, and would consider all the costs of implementing the
- intervention, and changes to downstream costs. In some cases, the downstream
- 12 costs are negative, and refer to cost savings. For example, an intervention such as
- increasing physical activity, whose effects may include preventing type 2 diabetes,
- may be paid for by local government, but may result in cost savings to the NHS in
- the form of fewer or delayed cases of diabetes. A public sector cost perspective
- would aggregate all these costs and cost savings. A narrower local government cost
- perspective would consider only the cost of implementation, whereas an NHS cost
- perspective would consider only the cost savings. When examining interventions that
- are not paid for by an arm of government (such as workplace interventions), the
- 20 perspective on costs should be discussed and agreed with NICE staff with
- 21 responsibility for quality assurance.
- 22 Productivity costs should usually be excluded from both the reference-case and
- 23 non-reference-case analyses; exceptions (for example, when evaluating
- interventions in the workplace) can only be made with the agreement of NICE staff
- with a quality assurance role.
- 26 For public health interventions, all direct health effects for people using services or,
- when relevant, other people such as family members or informal carers will be
- included. Non-health effects may also be included. When required, the perspective
- 29 will be widened to include sectors that do not bear the cost of an intervention, but
- 30 receive some kind of benefit from it.

Interventions with a social care focus

1

- 2 For decision problems where the interventions evaluated have a clear focus on
- 3 social care outcomes, the reference case on 'interventions with a social care focus'
- 4 should be chosen. For the base-case analysis, a cost-utility analysis should be done
- 5 using a cost per QALY approach where possible.
- 6 Public sector funding of social care for individual service users is subject to eligibility
- 7 criteria based on a needs assessment and a financial assessment (means test).
- 8 Therefore users of social care may have to fund, or partly fund, their own care. A
- 9 public sector perspective on costs should still be adopted, but should consider
- 10 different scenarios of funding.
- A public sector perspective is likely to be a local authority perspective for many
- social care interventions, but downstream costs that affect other public sector bodies
- may be taken into account where relevant, especially if they are a direct
- consequence of the primary aim of the intervention. When individuals may pay a
- 15 contribution towards their social care. 2 further perspectives may also be pertinent: a
- societal perspective (which takes account of changes to the amount that individuals
- and private firms pay towards the cost of care, on top of the public sector
- contributions) and an individual perspective (which accounts for changes in
- individual payments only). The value of unpaid care may also be included in
- sensitivity analysis, or to aid decision-making. Productivity costs should usually be
- 21 excluded from both the reference-case and non-reference-case analyses; exceptions
- can only be made with the agreement of NICE staff with responsibility for quality
- assurance.
- 24 For social care interventions, the usual perspective on outcomes will be all effects on
- 25 people for whom services are delivered including, when relevant, family members or
- informal carers. When required, the perspective may be widened to include sectors
- that do not bear the cost of an intervention, but receive some kind of benefit from it.

Other perspectives

- Other perspectives (for example, employers) may also be used to capture significant
- costs and effects that are material to the interventions. If other perspectives are
- used, this should be agreed with NICE staff with responsibility for quality assurance
- 32 before use.

7.4 Reviewing economic evaluations

- 2 Identifying and examining published economic evidence that is relevant to the review
- 3 questions is an important component of guideline development. The general
- 4 approach to reviewing economic evaluations should be systematic, focused and
- 5 pragmatic. The review protocol (see section 4.5) and the principal search strategy
- 6 (see section 5.4) should be posted on the NICE website 6 weeks before consultation
- 7 on the draft guideline.

8 Searching for economic evidence

- 9 The approach to searching for economic evidence should be systematic. The
- strategies and criteria used should be stated explicitly in the guideline and applied
- 11 consistently.

1

- 12 The advice in section 5.4 about how to develop search strategies may be relevant to
- the systematic search for economic evaluations. The types of searches that might be
- 14 needed are described below.

15 Initial scoping search to identify economic evaluations

- 16 A scoping search may be performed to look for economic evaluations relevant to
- current practice in the UK and therefore likely to be relevant to decision-making by
- the committee (see chapter 3). This should cover areas likely to be included in the
- 19 scope (see chapter 2).
- 20 Economic databases (see appendix G) should be searched using the population
- 21 terms used in the evidence review. Other databases relevant to the topic and likely
- 22 to include relevant economic evaluations should also be searched using the
- 23 population terms with a published economics search filter (see section 5.4). At the
- 24 initial scoping stage, it may be efficient to limit any searches of databases that are
- 25 sources for NHS EED to studies indexed after December 2014 when the searches to
- identify studies for NHS EED ceased..
- 27 Economic evaluations of social care may be published in journals not be identified
- through standard searches. Pragmatic searches based on references of key articles
- and contacting authors should be considered for identifying relevant papers.

Further systematic search to identify economic evaluations

- 2 For some review questions a full systematic search, covering all appropriate sources
- 3 (appendix G) and all years, should be performed to identify all relevant economic
- 4 evaluations. This should include all review questions for which economic
- 5 considerations are relevant. There are several methods for identifying economic
- 6 evaluations and the developer should choose the appropriate method and record the
- 7 reasons for the choice in the search protocol. All relevant review questions could be
- 8 covered by a single search using the population search terms, combined with a
- 9 search filter where appropriate, to identify economic evaluations and outcome data.
- Another approach may be to use the search strategies derived with/from the review
- question(s) combined with a search filter(s) to identify economic evaluations and
- outcome data. If using this approach, it may be necessary to adapt strategies in
- some databases to ensure adequate sensitivity (Wood et al. 2017). Another option is
- 14 to identify economic evaluations and quality-of-life data alongside screening for
- evidence for effectiveness. Further guidance on searching for economic evaluations
- is available from <u>SuRe Info</u>.

17 Selecting relevant economic evaluations

- 18 The process for sifting and selecting economic evaluations for assessment is
- essentially the same as for effectiveness studies (see section 6.1). It should be
- targeted to identify the papers that are most relevant to current UK practice and
- therefore likely to inform the committee's decision-making.
- 22 Inclusion criteria for sifting and selecting papers for each review should specify
- 23 populations and interventions relevant to the review question. They should also
- 24 specify:

- An appropriate date range, because older studies may reflect outdated practices.
- The country or setting, because studies conducted in other countries might not be
- 27 relevant to the UK. In some cases it may be appropriate to limit consideration to
- the UK or countries with similar healthcare systems.
- 29 The review should also usually focus on economic evaluations that compare both the
- 30 costs and consequences of the alternative interventions under consideration. Cost—
- utility, cost–benefit, cost-effectiveness, cost-minimisation or cost–consequences

- analyses can be considered depending on what the committee deems to be the most
- 2 relevant perspective and likely outcomes for the question. Non-comparative costing
- 3 studies, 'burden of disease' studies and 'cost of illness' studies should usually be
- 4 excluded; but non-comparative costing studies (such as econometric, efficiency,
- 5 simulation, micro-costing and resource use, and time-series) may be included for
- 6 some service delivery questions. Sometimes, the published economic evidence is
- 7 extremely sparse. In such cases, the inclusion criteria for studies may be broadened.
- 8 The decision to do this is taken by the developer in consultation with NICE staff with
- 9 responsibility for quality assurance and, when appropriate, with the committee or its
- 10 chair.

11 Assessing the quality of economic evaluations

- 12 All economic evaluations relevant to the guideline should be appraised using the
- methodology checklists (see appendix H). These should be used to appraise
- unpublished economic evaluations, such as studies submitted by registered
- stakeholders and academic papers that are not yet published, as well as published
- papers. The same criteria should be applied to any new economic evaluations
- 17 conducted for the guideline (see section 7.6).
- 18 Exclusion of economic evaluations will depend on the amount of higher-quality
- 19 evidence and the degree of certainty about the cost effectiveness of an intervention
- 20 (when all the evidence is considered as a whole). Lower-quality studies are more
- 21 likely to be excluded when cost effectiveness (or lack of it) can be reliably
- 22 established without them.
- 23 Sometimes reported sensitivity analyses indicate whether the results of an
- evaluation or study are robust despite methodological limitations. If there is no
- 25 sensitivity analysis, judgement is needed to assess whether a limitation would be
- likely to change the results and conclusions. If necessary, the health technology
- 27 assessment checklist for decision-analytic models (Philips et al. 2004) may also be
- 28 used to give a more detailed assessment of the methodological quality of economic
- 29 evaluations and modelling studies. Judgements made, and reasons for these
- judgements, should be recorded in the guideline.

1 Summarising and presenting results for economic evaluations

- 2 Cost-effectiveness or net benefit estimates from published or unpublished studies, or
- 3 from original economic evaluations conducted for the guideline, should be presented
- 4 in the guideline, for example, using an 'economic evidence profile' (see appendix H).
- 5 This should include relevant economic information (applicability, limitations, costs,
- 6 effects, cost-effectiveness and/or net benefit estimates as appropriate). It should be
- 7 explicitly stated if economic information is not available or if it is not thought to be
- 8 relevant to the review question.
- 9 A short evidence statement that summarises the key features of the evidence on
- 10 cost effectiveness should be included in the evidence review.

7.5 Prioritising questions for further economic analysis

- 12 If a high-quality economic analysis that addresses a key issue and is relevant to
- current practice has already been published, then further modelling may not be
- 14 needed. However, often the economic literature is not sufficiently robust or
- applicable. Original economic analyses should only be performed if an existing
- analysis cannot easily be adapted to answer the question.

17 Economic plans

- The full economic plan initially identifies key areas of the scope as priorities for
- 19 further economic analysis and outlines proposed methods for addressing review
- 20 questions about cost effectiveness. The full economic plan may be modified during
- development of the guideline; for example, as evidence is reviewed, it may become
- 22 apparent that further economic evaluation is not needed for some areas that were
- 23 initially prioritised. A version of the economic plan setting out the questions prioritised
- 24 for further economic analysis, the population, the interventions and the type of
- economic analysis is published on the NICE website at least 6 weeks before the
- 26 guideline goes out for consultation (see section 4.5). The reasons for the final choice
- of priorities for economic analysis should be explained in the guideline.
- 28 Discussion of the economic plan with the committee early in guideline development
- 29 is essential to ensure that:
- the most important questions are selected for economic analysis
- the methodological approach is appropriate (including the reference case)

- all important effects and resource costs are included
- effects and outcomes relating to a broader societal perspective are included if
- 3 relevant
- additional effects and outcomes not related to health or social care are included if
- 5 they are relevant
- economic evidence is available to support recommendations that are likely to lead
- 7 to substantial costs.
- 8 The number and complexity of new analyses depends on the priority areas and the
- 9 information needed for decision-making by the committee. Selection of questions for
- 10 further economic analysis, including modelling, should be based on systematic
- consideration of the potential value of economic analysis across all key issues.
- 12 Economic analysis is potentially useful for any question in which an intervention,
- service or programme is compared with another. It may also be appropriate in
- comparing different combinations or sequences of interventions, as well as individual
- components of the service or intervention. However, the broad scope of some
- guidelines means that it may not be practical to conduct original economic analysis
- 17 for every component.
- 18 The decision about whether to carry out an economic analysis therefore depends on:
- the potential overall expected benefit and resource implications of an intervention
- both for individual people and the population as a whole
- the degree of uncertainty in the economic evidence review and the likelihood that
- economic analysis will clarify matters.
- 23 Economic modelling may not be warranted if:
- It is not possible to estimate cost effectiveness. However, in this case, a 'scenario'
- or 'threshold' analysis may be useful.
- The intervention has no likelihood of being cost saving and its harms outweigh its
- benefits.
- The published evidence of cost effectiveness is so reliable that further economic
- analysis is not needed.

- The benefits sufficiently outweigh the costs (that is, it is obvious that the
- 2 intervention is cost effective) or the costs sufficiently outweigh the benefits (that is,
- it is obvious that the intervention is not cost effective).
- An intervention has very small costs, very small benefits and very small budget
- 5 impact.

6 7.6 Approaches to be spoke economic evaluation

7 General principles

- 8 Regardless of the methodological approach taken, the general principles described
- 9 below should be observed. Any variation from these principles should be described
- and justified in the guideline. The decision problem should be clearly stated. This
- should include a definition and justification of the interventions or programmes being
- 12 assessed and the relevant groups using services (including carers).
- 13 Developing conceptual models linked to topic areas or review questions may help
- the health economist to decide what key information is needed for developing
- effectiveness and cost-effectiveness analyses (see chapter 2 for details). Models
- developed for public health and service delivery topics are likely to relate to several
- 17 review questions, so almost all recommendations will be underpinned by some form
- 18 of modelled analysis.
- 19 The choice of model structure is a key aspect of the design-orientated conceptual
- 20 model. Brennan's taxonomy of model structures (Brennan et al. 2006) should be
- 21 considered for guidance on which types of models may be appropriate to the
- 22 decision problem.
- Even if a fully modelled analysis is not possible, there may be value in the process of
- 24 model development, because this will help to structure committee discussions. For
- example, a model might be able to demonstrate how a change in service will affect
- demand for a downstream service or intervention.
- 27 For service delivery questions, the key challenge is linking changes in service to a
- health benefit. This obviously poses a challenge when conducting health economic
- analyses, but it will also be difficult finding high-quality evidence of effectiveness.
- 30 Modelling using scenario analysis is usually needed to generate the health effects

- 1 used within the health economic analyses. Because of the considerable resource
- 2 and health impact of any recommendations on service delivery, its cost-effectiveness
- must be considered, either analytically or qualitatively (see appendix A).
- 4 Economic analysis should include comparison of all relevant alternatives for
- 5 specified groups of people affected by the intervention or using services. Any
- 6 differences between the review question(s) and the economic analysis should be
- 7 clearly acknowledged, justified, approved by the committee and explained in the
- 8 guideline. The interventions or services included in the analysis should be described
- 9 in enough detail to allow stakeholders to understand exactly what is being assessed.
- This is particularly important when calculating the cost effectiveness of services.
- An economic analysis should be underpinned by the best-quality evidence. The
- evidence should be based on and be consistent with that identified for the relevant
- review question. If expert opinion is used to derive information used in the economic
- analysis, this should be clearly stated and justified in the guideline.
- 15 The structure of any economic model should be discussed and agreed with the
- 16 committee early in guideline development. The reasons for the structure of the model
- should be clear. Potential alternatives should be identified and considered for use in
- 18 sensitivity analysis. If existing economic models are being used, or are informing a
- 19 new analysis, the way these models are adapted or used should be clear.
- 20 For service delivery questions, any analysis will need to consider resource
- constraints. These might be monetary, but might also be resources such as staff,
- beds, equipment and so on. However, affordability should not be the sole
- consideration for service recommendations; the impact of any proposed changes on
- 24 quality of care needs to be considered.
- 25 Before presenting final results to a committee for decision-making, all economic
- 26 evaluations should undergo rigorous quality assessment and validation to assess
- inputs, identify logical, mathematical and computational errors, and review the
- 28 plausibility of outputs. The HM Treasury 'review of quality assurance of government
- 29 models' (2013) provides guidance on developing the environment and processes
- required to promote effective quality assurance. This process should be
- 31 documented.

- 1 Quality assurance of an economic evaluation may take various forms at different
- 2 stages in development, as detailed in the HM Treasury Aqua Book (2015). It can
- 3 range from basic steps that should always occur, such as disciplined version control,
- 4 extensive developer testing of their own model, and independent testing by a
- 5 colleague with the necessary technical knowledge, to external testing by an
- 6 independent third party and independent analytical audit of all data and methods
- 7 used. For developer health economists testing their own evaluation, or those of
- 8 others ('model busting'), useful and practical validation methods include:
- 1-way and *n*-way sensitivity analyses, including null values and extreme values (Krahn et al. 1997)
- ensuring that the model results can be explained, for example' the logic and
- reason underlying the effect of a particular scenario analysis on results
- ensuring that predictions of intermediate end points (for example, event rate
- counts) and final end points (for example, undiscounted life expectancy) are
- plausible, including comparison with source materials.
- Results should be reported of any analyses conducted to demonstrate external
- validity. However, relevant data should not be omitted just to facilitate external
- validation (for example, not including trials so that they can be used for subsequent
- 19 validation).
- 20 Conventions on reporting economic evaluations should be followed (see Drummond
- 21 and Jefferson 1996) to ensure that reporting of methods and results is transparent.
- For time horizons that extend beyond 10 years, it may be useful to report discounted
- costs and effects for the short (1–3 years) and medium (5–10 years) term. The
- 24 following results should be presented where available and relevant:
- end points from the analysis, such as life years gained, number of events and
- 26 survival
- disaggregated costs
- total and incremental costs and effects for all options.
- When comparing multiple mutually exclusive options, a fully incremental approach
- 30 should be adopted that compares the interventions sequentially in rank order of cost

- or outcome, with each strategy compared with the next-cheapest non-dominated
- 2 alternative. Comparisons with a common baseline should not be used for
- decision-making, although should be included in the incremental analysis.
- 4 Economic model(s) developed for the guideline are available to registered
- 5 stakeholders during consultation on the guideline. These models should be fully
- 6 executable and clearly presented.

7 Different approaches to economic analysis

- 8 There are different approaches to economic analysis. If economic analysis is
- 9 needed, the most appropriate approach should be considered early during the
- development of a guideline, and reflect the content of the guideline scope.
- 11 Cost–utility analysis is a form of cost-effectiveness analysis that uses utility as a
- common outcome. It considers people's quality of life and the length of life they will
- gain as a result of an intervention or a programme. The health effects are expressed
- 14 as QALYs, an outcome that can be compared between different populations and
- disease areas. Costs of resources, and their valuation, should be related to the
- prices relevant to the sector.
- 17 If a cost–utility analysis is not possible (for example, when outcomes cannot be
- expressed using a utility measure such as the QALY), a cost–consequences
- analysis may be considered. Cost–consequences analysis can consider all the
- 20 relevant health and non-health effects of an intervention across different sectors and
- 21 reports them without aggregation. A cost–consequences analysis that includes most
- or all of the potential outcomes of an intervention will be more useful than an
- 23 analysis that only reports 1 or 2 outcomes.
- 24 A cost-consequence analysis is useful when different outcomes cannot be
- incorporated into an index measure. It is helpful to produce a table that summarises
- all the costs and outcomes and enables the options to be considered in a concise
- 27 and consistent manner. Outcomes that can be monetised are quantified and
- presented in monetary terms. Some effects may be quantified but cannot readily be
- 29 put into monetary form (for more details see the Department for Transport's
- 30 <u>Transport Analysis Guidance [TAG] unit 2.11</u>). Some effects cannot readily be
- quantified (such as reductions in the degree of bullying or discrimination) and should

- 1 be considered by decision-making committees as part of a cost–consequences
- 2 analysis alongside effects that can be quantified.
- 3 All effects (even if they cannot be quantified) and costs of an intervention are
- 4 considered when deciding which interventions represent the best value. Effectively,
- 5 cost–consequences analysis provides a 'balance sheet' of outcomes that
- 6 decision-makers can weigh up against the costs of an intervention (including related
- 7 future costs).
- 8 If, for example, a commissioner wants to ensure the maximum health gain for the
- 9 whole population, they might prioritise the incremental cost per QALY gained. But if
- reducing health inequalities is the priority, they might focus on interventions that work
- best for the most disadvantaged groups, even if they are more costly and could
- reduce the health gain achieved in the population as a whole.
- 13 Cost-effectiveness analysis uses a measure of outcome (a life year saved, a death
- averted, a patient-year free of symptoms) and assesses the cost per unit of
- achieving this outcome by different means. The outcome is not separately valued,
- only quantified; so the study takes no view on whether the cost is worth incurring,
- only focusing on the cost of different methods of achieving units of outcome.
- 18 Cost-minimisation analysis is the simplest form of economic analysis, which can be
- used when the health effects of an intervention are the same as those of the status
- 20 quo, and when there are no other criteria for whether the intervention should be
- 21 recommended. For example, cost-minimisation analysis could be used to decide
- whether a doctor or nurse should give routine injections when it is found that both
- 23 are equally effective at giving injections (on average). In cost-minimisation analysis,
- 24 an intervention is cost effective only if its net cost is lower than that of the status quo.
- 25 The disadvantage of cost-minimisation analysis is that the health effects of an
- intervention cannot often be considered equal to those of the status quo.
- 27 Cost–benefit analysis considers health and non-health effects but converts them into
- 28 monetary values, which can then be aggregated. Once this has been done, 'decision'
- 29 rules' are used to decide which interventions to undertake. Several metrics are
- available for reporting the results of cost–benefit analysis. Two commonly used
- metrics are the 'benefit-cost-ratio' (BCR) and the 'net present value' (NPV) see the

- 1 Department for Transport's <u>Transport Analysis Guidance (TAG) Unit A1.1</u> for more
- 2 information.
- 3 Cost–utility analysis is required routinely by NICE for the economic evaluation of
- 4 health-related interventions, programmes and services, for several reasons:
- When used in conjunction with an NHS and personal social services perspective,
- it provides a single yardstick or 'currency' for measuring the impact of
- 7 interventions. It also allows interventions to be compared so that resources may
- 8 be allocated more efficiently.
- Where possible, NICE programmes use a common method of cost-effectiveness
- analysis that allows comparisons between programmes.
- However, because local government is largely responsible for implementing public
- health and wellbeing programmes and for commissioning social care, NICE has
- broadened its approach for the appraisal of interventions in these areas. Local
- 14 government is responsible not only for the health of individuals and communities, but
- also for their overall welfare. The tools used for economic evaluation must reflect a
- wider remit than health and allow greater local variation. The nature of the evidence
- and that of the outcomes being measured may place more emphasis on cost—
- consequences analysis and cost–benefit analysis for interventions in these areas.
- 19 The type of economic analysis that should be considered is informed by the setting
- specified in the scope of the guideline, and the extent to which the effects resulting
- 21 from the intervention extend beyond health.
- 22 There is often a trade-off between the range of new analyses that can be conducted
- 23 and the complexity of each piece of analysis. Simple methods may be used if these
- can provide the committee with enough information on which to base a decision. For
- example, if an intervention is associated with better outcomes and fewer adverse
- effects than its comparator, then an estimate of cost may be all that is needed. Or a
- 27 simple decision tree may provide a sufficiently reliable estimate of cost effectiveness.
- In other situations a more complex approach, such as Markov modelling or discrete
- 29 event simulation, may be warranted.

Measuring and valuing effects for health interventions

- 2 The QALY is the measure of health effects preferred by NICE, based on
- 3 patient-reported changes in health-related quality of life, and combines both quantity
- 4 and health-related quality of life into a single measure of health gain. The EQ-5D is
- 5 the preferred instrument to measure health-related quality of life in adults. The value
- 6 placed on health-related quality of life of people using services (or their carers)
- 7 should be based on a valuation of public preferences elicited from a representative
- 8 sample of the UK population.

- 9 For some economic analyses, a flexible approach may be needed, reflecting the
- 10 nature of effects delivered by different interventions or programmes. If health effects
- are relevant, the EQ-5D-based QALY should be used. When EQ-5D data are not
- 12 available from relevant clinical studies, EQ-5D data can be sourced from the
- literature. When obtained from the literature, the methods used for identifying the
- data should be systematic and transparent. The justification for choosing a particular
- data set should be clearly explained. When more than 1 plausible set of EQ-5D data
- is available, sensitivity analyses should be carried out to show the impact of the
- 17 alternative utility values. When EQ-5D data are not available, published mapped EQ-
- 18 5D should be used, or they may be estimated by mapping other health-related
- 19 quality-of-life measures or health-related effects observed in the relevant studies to
- 20 the EQ-5D if data are available. The mapping function chosen should be based on
- 21 data sets containing both health-related quality-of-life measures. The statistical
- 22 properties of the mapping function should be fully described, its choice justified, and
- 23 it should be adequately demonstrated how well the function fits the data. Sensitivity
- 24 analyses exploring variation in the use of the mapping algorithms on the outputs
- should be presented. When necessary, consideration should be given to alternative
- standardised and validated preference-based measures of health-related quality of
- 27 life that have been designed specifically for use in children. The standard version of
- the EQ-5D has not been designed for use in children. An alternative version for
- 29 children aged 7–12 years is available, but a validated UK valuation set is not yet
- 30 available.
- As outlined in NICE's <u>Guide to the methods of technology appraisal 2013</u> and an
- 32 accompanying position statement on use of the EQ-5D-5L valuation set (2017),

- currently the EQ-5D 5 level (5L) valuation set is not recommended for use by NICE.
- 2 Guideline developers should:
- Use the 3L valuation set for reference-case analyses.
- Calculate utility values for reference-case analyses by mapping the 5L descriptive
- 5 system data onto the 3L valuation set if data were gathered using the EQ-5D-5L
- 6 descriptive system.
- Use the 3L valuation set to derive all utility values, with 5L mapped onto 3L where
- 8 needed, if analyses use data gathered using both EQ-5D-3L and EQ-5D-5L
- 9 descriptive systems.
- Use the mapping function developed by van Hout et al. (2012) when several
- mapping functions are available (Hernandez Alava et al. 2017), for consistency
- with the current guide to the methods of technology appraisal.
- 13 If mapping to the EQ-5D is not possible (for example, if no data are available) other
- 14 approaches may be used (for more details see NICE's Guide to the methods of
- 15 <u>technology appraisal 2013</u>).
- 16 The QALY remains the most suitable measure for assessing the impact of services,
- because it can incorporate effects from extension to life and experience of care. It
- can also include the trade-offs of benefits and adverse events. However, if linking to
- 19 a QALY gain is not possible, links to a clinically relevant or a related outcome should
- 20 be considered. Outcomes should be optimised for the lowest resource use. The link
- 21 (either direct or indirect) of any surrogate outcome, such as a process outcome (for
- 22 example, bed days), to a clinical outcome needs to be justified. However, when
- 23 QALYs are not used, issues such as trade-offs between different beneficial and
- 24 harmful effects need to be considered.

25 Measuring and valuing effects for non-health interventions

- 26 For some decision problems (such as for interventions with a social care focus), the
- 27 intended outcomes of interventions are broader than improvements in health status.
- Here broader, preference-weighted measures of outcomes, based on specific
- 29 instruments, may be more appropriate. For example, social care quality-of-life
- measures are being developed and NICE will consider using 'social care QALYs' if
- validated, such as the ASCOT (Adult Social Care Outcome Toolkit) set of

- instruments used by the Department of Health in the Adult Social Care Outcomes
- 2 Framework indicator on social care-related quality of life.
- 3 Similarly, depending on the topic, and on the intended effects of the interventions
- 4 and programmes, the economic analysis may also consider effects in terms of
- 5 capability and wellbeing. For capability effects, use of the ICECAP-O (Investigating
- 6 Choice Experiments for the Preferences of Older People CAPability measure for
- 7 Older people) or ICECAP-A (Investigating Choice Experiments for the Preferences of
- 8 Older People CAPability measure for Adults) instruments may be considered by
- 9 NICE when developing methodology in the future. If an intervention is associated
- with both health- and non-health-related effects, it may be helpful to present these
- 11 elements separately.
- 12 Economic analysis for interventions funded by the NHS and PSS with health
- 13 outcomes
- 14 Economic analyses conducted for decisions about interventions with health
- outcomes funded by the NHS and PSS should usually follow the reference case in
- table 7.1 described in NICE's Guide to the methods of technology appraisal 2013.
- 17 Advice on how to follow approaches described in NICE's <u>Guide to the methods of</u>
- technology appraisal 2013 is provided by the technical support documents
- developed by NICE's Decision Support Unit. Departures from the reference case
- 20 may sometimes be appropriate; for example, when there are not enough data to
- 21 estimate QALYs gained. Any such departures must be agreed with members of
- 22 NICE staff with a quality assurance role and highlighted in the guideline with reasons
- 23 given.
- 24 Economic analysis for interventions funded by the public sector with health
- 25 and non-health outcomes
- The usual perspective for the economic analysis of public health interventions is that
- of the public sector. This may be simplified to a local government perspective if few
- costs and effects apply to other government agencies.
- 29 Whenever there are multiple outcomes, a cost–consequences analysis is usually
- needed, and the committee weighs up the changes to the various outcomes against
- the changes in costs in an open and transparent manner. However, for the base-

- case analysis, a cost–utility analysis should be undertaken using a cost per QALY
- 2 approach where possible.
- 3 A societal perspective may be used, and will usually be carried out using cost—
- 4 benefit analysis. When a societal perspective is used, it must be agreed with NICE
- 5 staff with responsibility for quality assurance and highlighted in the guideline with
- 6 reasons given.

7 Economic analysis for interventions with a social care focus

- 8 For social care interventions, the perspective on outcomes should be all effects on
- 9 people for whom services are delivered (people using services and/or carers).
- 10 Effects on people using services and carers (whether expressed in terms of health
- effects, social care quality of life, capability or wellbeing) are the intended outcomes
- of social care interventions and programmes. Although holistic effects on people
- using services, their families and carers may represent the ideal perspective on
- outcomes, a pragmatic and flexible approach is needed to address different
- perspectives, recognising that improved outcomes for people using services and
- 16 carers may not always coincide.
- Whenever there are multiple outcomes, a cost–consequences analysis is usually
- needed, and the committee weighs up the changes to the various outcomes against
- the changes in costs in an open and transparent manner. However, for the base-
- case analysis, a cost–utility analysis should be undertaken using a cost per QALY
- approach where possible.
- 22 Any economic model should take account of the proportion of care that is publicly
- funded or self-funded. Scenario analysis may also be useful to take account of any
- 24 known differences between local authorities in terms of how they apply eligibility
- criteria. Scenario analysis should also be considered if the cost of social care varies
- depending on whether it is paid for by local authorities or by individual service users;
- the value of unpaid care should also be taken into account where appropriate.
- 28 It is envisaged that the analytical difficulties involved in creating clear, transparent
- decision rules around the costs that should be considered, and for which
- interventions and outcomes, will be particularly problematic for social care. These

- should be discussed with the committee before any economic analysis is undertaken
- 2 and an approach agreed.

3 Identification and selection of model inputs

- 4 An economic analysis uses decision-analytic techniques with probability, cost and
- 5 outcome data from the best available published sources.
- 6 The reference case across all perspectives (<u>table 7.1</u>) states that evidence on effects
- 7 should be obtained from a systematic review.
- 8 Additional searches may be needed; for example, if searches for evidence on effects
- 9 do not provide the information needed for economic modelling. Additional information
- may be needed on:
- disease prognosis
- the relationship between short- and long-term outcomes
- quality of life
- 14 adverse events
- resource use or costs.
- Although it is desirable to conduct systematic literature reviews for all such inputs,
- this is time-consuming and other pragmatic options for identifying inputs may be
- used. Informal searches should aim to satisfy the principle of 'saturation' (that is, to
- 19 'identify the breadth of information needs relevant to a model and sufficient
- 20 information such that further efforts to identify more information would add nothing to
- the analysis' (Kaltenthaler et al. 2011). Studies identified in the review of evidence on
- 22 effects should be scrutinised for other relevant data, and attention should be paid to
- 23 the sources of parameters in analyses included in the systematic review of published
- 24 economic evaluations. Alternatives could include asking committee members and
- other experts for suitable evidence or eliciting their opinions, for example, using
- formal consensus methods such as the Delphi technique or the nominal-group
- 27 technique. If a systematic review is not possible, transparent processes for
- 28 identifying model inputs should be reported; the internal quality and external validity
- of each potential data-source should be assessed and their selection justified. If
- more than 1 suitable source of evidence is found, consideration should be given to
- 31 synthesis and/or exploration of alternative values in sensitivity analyses. Further

- guidance on searching and selecting evidence for key model inputs is available from
- 2 Kaltenthaler et al. (2011) and Paisley (2016).
- 3 Data from registries and audits may be used to inform both estimates of
- 4 effectiveness and any modelling, particularly for service delivery questions. To obtain
- 5 such data, it may be necessary to negotiate access with the organisations and
- 6 individuals that hold the data, or to ask them to provide a summary for inclusion in
- 7 the guidance. Any processes used for accessing data will need to be reported in the
- 8 health economic plan and in the guideline. Given the difficulties that organisations
- 9 may have in extracting audit data, such requests should be focused and targeted: for
- 10 example, identifying a specific audit and requesting results from the previous
- 11 3 years.
- 12 For some questions, there may be good reason to believe that relevant and useful
- information exists outside of literature databases or validated national data sources.
- Examples include ongoing research, a relatively new intervention and studies that
- have been published only as abstracts. Typically, the method for requesting
- information from stakeholders is through a call for evidence (see section 5.5).
- 17 For some guidelines, econometric studies provide a supplementary source of
- evidence and data for bespoke economic models. For these studies, the database
- 19 'Econlit' should be searched as a minimum.
- 20 Information on costs may be found in the Personal Social Services Research Unit
- 21 report on unit costs of health and social care or the Department of Health reference
- 22 <u>costs (provider perspective)</u>. Information on costing can be found in NICE's <u>methods</u>
- 23 guide on resource impact assessment. Some information about public services may
- be better obtained from national statistics or databases, rather than from published
- studies. Philips et al. (2004) provide a useful guide to searching for data for use in
- 26 economic models.
- In cases where current costs are not available, costs from previous years should be
- adjusted to present value using the hospital and community health services (HCHS)
- 29 inflation index, available from the <u>PSSRU report on unit costs of health and social</u>
- 30 care.

- 1 Wherever possible, costs relevant to the UK healthcare system should be used.
- 2 However, in cases where only costs from other countries are available these should
- 3 be converted to Pounds Sterling using an exchange rate from an appropriate and
- 4 current source (such as <u>HM Revenue and Customs</u>).
- 5 As outlined in NICE's <u>Guide to the methods of technology appraisal 2013</u>, the public
- 6 list prices for technologies (for example, medicines or medical devices) should be
- 7 used in the reference-case analysis. When there are nationally available price
- 8 reductions (for example, for medicines procured for use in secondary care through
- 9 contracts negotiated by the NHS Commercial Medicines Unit), the reduced price
- should be used in the reference-case analysis to best reflect the price relevant to the
- NHS. The Commercial Medicines Unit publishes information on the prices paid for
- some generic medicines by NHS trusts through its Electronic Market Information
- 13 Tool (eMIT), focusing on medicines in the 'National Generics Programme
- 14 Framework' for England. Analyses based on price reductions for the NHS will be
- considered only when the reduced prices are transparent and can be consistently
- available across the NHS, and when the period for which the specified price is
- available is guaranteed. When a reduced price is available through a patient access
- scheme that has been agreed with the Department of Health, the analyses should
- include the costs associated with the scheme. For medicines that are predominantly
- 20 prescribed in primary care, prices should be based on the Drug Tariff. In the absence
- of a published list price and a price agreed by a national institution (as may be the
- case for some devices), an alternative price may be considered, provided that it is
- 23 nationally and publicly available. If no other information is available on costs, local
- costs obtained from the committee may be used.
- 25 Preference-based quality-of-life data are often needed for economic models. Many of
- the search filters available are highly sensitive and so, although they identify relevant
- studies, they also detect a large amount of irrelevant data. An initial broad literature
- search for quality-of-life data may be a good option, but the amount of information
- 29 identified may be unmanageable (depending on the key issue being addressed). It
- 30 may be more appropriate and manageable to incorporate a quality of life search filter
- when performing additional searches for key issues of high economic priority. When
- 32 searching bibliographic databases for health-state utility values, specific techniques

- outlined in Ara (2017) and Golder et al. (2005) and Papaioannou et al. (2010) may
- 2 be useful, and specific search filters have been developed that may increase
- 3 sensitivity (Arber et al., 2017). The provision of quality-of-life data should be guided
- 4 by the economist at an early stage during guideline development so that the
- 5 information specialist can adopt an appropriate strategy. Resources for identifying
- 6 useful utility data for economic modelling are the dedicated registries of health-state
- 7 utility values such as ScHARRHUD and Tufts CEA Registry and the technical
- 8 <u>support document</u> developed by NICE's Decision Support Unit.

9 **Exploring uncertainty**

- 10 The committee should discuss any potential bias and limitations of economic
- models. Sensitivity analysis should be used to explore the impact that potential
- sources of bias and uncertainty could have on model results.
- Deterministic sensitivity analysis should be used to explore key assumptions used in
- the modelling. This should test whether and how the model results change under
- alternative, plausible scenarios. Common examples of when deterministic sensitivity
- analysis could be conducted are:
- when there is uncertainty about the most appropriate assumption to use for
- extrapolation of costs and effects beyond the trial follow-up period
- when there is uncertainty about how the pathway of care is most appropriately
- represented in the analysis
- when there may be economies of scale (for example, when appraising diagnostic
- technologies)
- for infectious disease transmission models.
- 24 Deterministic sensitivity analysis should also be used to test any bias resulting from
- the data sources selected for key model inputs.
- 26 Probabilistic sensitivity analysis can be used to account for uncertainty arising from
- imprecision in model inputs. The use of probabilistic sensitivity analysis will often be
- specified in the health economic plan. Any uncertainty associated with all inputs can
- be simultaneously reflected in the results. In non-linear decision models where
- outputs are a result of a multiplicative function (for example, in Markov models),
- probabilistic methods also provide the best estimates of mean costs and outcomes.

- 1 The choice of distributions used should be justified; for example, in relation to the
- 2 available evidence or published literature. Presentation of the results of probabilistic
- 3 sensitivity analysis could include scatter plots or confidence ellipses, with an option
- 4 for including cost-effectiveness acceptability curves and frontiers.
- 5 When a probabilistic sensitivity analysis is carried out, a value of information analysis
- 6 may be considered to indicate whether more research is necessary, either before
- 7 recommending an intervention or in conjunction with a recommendation. The
- 8 circumstances in which a value of information analysis should be considered will
- 9 depend on whether more information is likely to be available soon and whether this
- information is likely to influence the decision to recommend the intervention.
- When probabilistic methods are unsuitable, the impact of parameter uncertainty
- should be thoroughly explored using deterministic sensitivity analysis, and the
- decision not to use probabilistic methods should be justified in the guideline.
- 14 Consideration can be given to including structural assumptions and the inclusion or
- exclusion of data sources in probabilistic sensitivity analysis. In this case, the method
- used to select the distribution should be outlined in the guideline (Jackson et al.
- 17 2011).

18

Discounting

- 19 Cost-effectiveness results should reflect the present value of the stream of costs and
- 20 benefits accruing over the time horizon of the analysis. For the reference case, the
- same annual discount rate should be used for both costs and benefits (currently
- 22 3.5%).
- 23 The specific discount rate varies across NICE programmes and over time. NICE
- considers that it is usually appropriate to discount costs and health effects at the
- same annual rate of 3.5%, based on the recommendations of the UK Treasury for
- the discounting of costs.
- 27 Sensitivity analyses using 1.5% as an alternative rate for both costs and health
- effects may be presented alongside the reference-case analysis, particularly for
- 29 public health guidance. When treatment restores people who would otherwise die or
- 30 have a very severely impaired life to full or near full health, and when this is

- sustained over a very long period (normally at least 30 years), cost-effectiveness
- 2 analyses are very sensitive to the discount rate used. In this circumstance, analyses
- 3 that use a non-reference-case discount rate for costs and outcomes may be
- 4 considered. A discount rate of 1.5% for costs and benefits may be considered by the
- 5 committee if it is highly likely that, on the basis of the evidence presented, long-term
- 6 health benefits are likely to be achieved. However, the committee will need to be
- 7 satisfied that the recommendation does not commit the funder to significant
- 8 irrecoverable costs.

9 Subgroup analysis

- 10 The relevance of subgroup analysis to decision-making should be discussed with the
- committee. When appropriate, economic analyses should estimate the cost
- 12 effectiveness of an intervention in each subgroup.

Local considerations

13

23

- 14 Cost-effectiveness analyses may need to account for local factors, such as the
- expected number of procedures and the availability of staff and equipment at
- different times of the day, week and year. Models, particularly for service delivery
- questions, may need to incorporate the fact that each local provider may be starting
- from a different baseline of identified factors (for example, the number of consultants
- 19 available at weekends). It is therefore important that these factors are identified and
- 20 considered by the committee. Where possible, results obtained from the analysis
- 21 should include both the national average and identified local scenarios to ensure that
- 22 recommendations are robust to local variation.

Service failures

- 24 Service designs under consideration might result in occasional service failure that
- is, where the service does not operate as planned. For example, a service for
- treating myocardial infarction may have fewer places where people can be treated at
- weekends compared with weekdays as a result of reduced staffing. Therefore more
- people will need to travel by ambulance and the journey time will also be longer.
- 29 Given the limited number of ambulances, a small proportion may be delayed,
- resulting in consequences in terms of costs and QALYs. Such possible service
- failures should be taken into account in effectiveness and economic modelling. This

- 1 effectively means that analyses should incorporate the 'side effects' of service
- 2 designs.

3 Service demand

- 4 Introducing a new service or increasing capacity will often result in an increase in
- 5 demand. This could mean that a service does not achieve the predicted
- 6 effectiveness because there is more demand than was planned for. This should be
- 7 addressed either in the analysis or in considerations.

8 Equity considerations

- 9 NICE's economic evaluation of healthcare and public health interventions does not
- include equity weighting a QALY has the same weight for all population groups.
- It is important to recognise that care provision, specifically social care, may be
- means tested, and that this affects the economic perspective in terms of who bears
- costs the public sector or the person using services or their family. Economic
- evaluation should reflect the intentions of the system. Equity considerations relevant
- to specific topics, and how these were addressed in economic evaluation, must be
- 16 reported.

17

18

7.7 Using economic evidence to formulate guideline

recommendations

- 19 For an economic analysis to be useful, it must inform the guideline
- 20 recommendations. The committee should discuss cost effectiveness in parallel with
- 21 general effectiveness when formulating recommendations (see chapter 9).
- Within the context of NICE's principles on social value judgements, the committee
- 23 should be encouraged to consider recommendations that:
- increase effectiveness at an acceptable level of increased cost, or
- are less effective than current practice, but free up sufficient resources that can be
- re-invested in public sector care or services to increase the welfare of the
- 27 population receiving care.
- The committee's interpretations and discussions should be clearly presented in the
- 29 guideline. This should include a discussion of potential sources of bias and

- 1 uncertainty. It should also include the results of sensitivity analyses in the
- 2 consideration of uncertainty, as well as any additional considerations that are
- thought to be relevant. It should be explicitly stated if economic evidence is not
- 4 available, or if it is not thought to be relevant to the question.

5 Recommendations for interventions informed by cost-utility analysis

- 6 If there is strong evidence that an intervention dominates the alternatives (that is, it is
- both more effective and less costly), it should normally be recommended. However,
- 8 if 1 intervention is more effective but also more costly than another, then the
- 9 incremental cost-effectiveness ratio (ICER) should be considered.

10 Health effects

- 11 The cost per QALY gained should be calculated as the difference in mean cost
- divided by the difference in mean QALYs for 1 intervention compared with the other.
- 13 If 1 intervention appears to be more effective than another, the committee has to
- decide whether it represents reasonable 'value for money' as indicated by the
- relevant ICER. In doing so, the committee should also refer to NICE's principles on
- social value judgements (also see below).

'NICE has never identified an ICER above which interventions should not be recommended and below which they should. However, in general, interventions with an ICER of less than £20,000 per QALY gained are considered to be cost effective. Where advisory bodies consider that particular interventions with an ICER of less than £20,000 per QALY gained should not be provided by the NHS they should provide explicit reasons (for example, that there are significant limitations to the generalisability of the evidence for effectiveness). Above a most plausible ICER of £20,000 per QALY gained, judgements about the acceptability of the intervention as an effective use of NHS resources will specifically take account of the following factors.

The degree of certainty around the ICER. In particular, advisory bodies will be more cautious about recommending a technology when they are less certain about the ICERs presented in the cost-effectiveness analysis.

The presence of strong reasons indicating that the assessment of the change in the quality of life has been inadequately captured, and may therefore misrepresent, the health gain.

When the intervention is an innovation that adds demonstrable and distinct substantial benefits that may not have been adequately captured in the measurement of health gain.

As the ICER of an intervention increases in the £20,000 to £30,000 range, an advisory body's judgement about its acceptability as an effective use of NHS resources should make explicit reference to the relevant factors considered above. Above a most plausible ICER of £30,000 per QALY gained, advisory bodies will need to make an increasingly stronger case for supporting the intervention as an effective use of NHS resources with respect to the factors considered above.'

1

10

- 2 When assessing the cost effectiveness of competing courses of action, the
- 3 committee should not give particular priority to any intervention or approach that is
- 4 currently offered. In any situation where 'current practice', compared with an
- 5 alternative approach, generates an ICER above a level that would normally be
- 6 considered cost effective, the case for continuing to invest in it should be carefully
- 7 considered. The committee should be mindful of whether the intervention is
- 8 consuming more resource than its value is contributing based on NICE's cost per
- 9 QALY threshold.

Non-health effects

- Outside the health sector it is more difficult to judge whether the benefits accruing to
- the non-health sectors are cost effective, but it may be possible to undertake cost—
- utility analysis based on measures of social care-related quality of life. The
- committee should take into account the factors it considers most appropriate when
- making decisions about recommendations. These could include non-health-related
- outcomes that are valued by the rest of the public sector, including social care. It is
- possible that over time, and as the methodology develops (including the

- establishment of recognised standard measures of utility for social care), there will
- 2 be more formal methods for assessing cost effectiveness outside the health sector.

3 Recommendations for interventions informed by cost-benefit analysis

- 4 When considering cost–benefit analysis, the committee should be aware that an
- 5 aggregate of individual 'willingness to pay' (WTP) is likely to be more than
- 6 public-sector WTP, sometimes by quite a margin. If a conversion factor has been
- 7 used to estimate public sector WTP from an aggregate of individual WTP, the
- 8 committee should take this into account. In the absence of a conversion factor, the
- 9 committee should consider the possible discrepancy in WTP when making
- 10 recommendations that rely on a cost–benefit analysis.
- 11 The committee should also attempt to determine whether any adjustment should be
- made to convert 'ability-to-pay' estimates into those that prioritise on the basis of
- 13 need and the ability of an intervention to meet that need.
- 14 The committee should not recommend interventions with an estimated negative net
- present value (NPV) unless other factors such as social value judgements are likely
- to outweigh the costs. Given a choice of interventions with positive NPVs,
- 17 committees should prefer the intervention that maximises the NPV, unless other
- objectives override the economic loss incurred by choosing an intervention that does
- 19 not maximise NPV.
- 20 Care must be taken with published cost–benefit analyses to ensure that the value of
- 21 the health effects have been included. Older cost–benefit analyses, in particular,
- often consist of initial costs (called 'costs') and subsequent cost savings (called
- 23 'benefits') and fail to include health effects.

24 Recommendations for interventions informed by cost-consequences analysis

- 25 The committee should ensure that, where possible, the different sets of
- consequences do not double count costs or effects. The way that the sets of
- consequences have been implicitly weighted should be recorded as openly,
- transparently and as accurately as possible. Cost–consequences analysis then
- 29 requires the decision-maker to decide which interventions represent the best value
- using a systematic and transparent process. Various tools, such as multi-criteria
- decision analysis (MCDA), are available to support this part of the process, although

- attention needs to be given to any weightings used, particularly with reference to the
- 2 NICE reference case and NICE's principles on social value judgements.

3 Recommendations for interventions informed by cost-effectiveness analysis

- 4 If there is strong evidence that an intervention dominates the alternatives (that is, it is
- 5 both more effective and less costly), it should normally be recommended. However,
- 6 if 1 intervention is more effective but also more costly than another, then the ICER
- should be considered. If 1 intervention appears to be more effective than another,
- 8 the committee has to decide whether it represents reasonable 'value for money' as
- 9 indicated by the relevant ICER.
- 10 The committee should use an established ICER threshold. In the absence of an
- established threshold, the committee should estimate a threshold it thinks would
- represent reasonable 'value for money' as indicated by the relevant ICER.
- 13 The committee should take account of NICE's principles on social value judgements
- when making its decisions.

15 Recommendations for interventions informed by cost-minimisation analysis

- 16 Cost minimisation can be used when the difference in effects between an
- intervention and its comparator is known to be small and the cost difference is large
- 18 (for example, whether doctors or nurses should give routine injections). If it cannot
- be assumed from prior knowledge that the difference in effects is sufficiently small,
- ideally the difference should be determined by an equivalence trial, which usually
- requires a larger sample than a trial to determine superiority or non-inferiority. For
- this reason, cost-minimisation analysis is only applicable in a relatively small number
- of cases.

24

Recommendations when there is no economic evidence

- 25 When no relevant published studies are found, and a new economic analysis is not
- 26 prioritised, the committee should make a qualitative judgement about cost
- 27 effectiveness by considering potential differences in resource use and cost between
- 28 the options alongside the results of the review of evidence of effectiveness. This may
- include considering information about unit costs, which should be presented in the
- 30 guideline. The committee's considerations when assessing cost effectiveness in the
- 31 absence of evidence should be explained in the guideline.

1 Further considerations

- 2 Decisions about whether to recommend interventions should not be based on cost
- 3 effectiveness alone. The committee should also take into account other factors, such
- 4 as the need to prevent discrimination and to promote equity. The committee should
- 5 consider trade-offs between efficient and equitable allocations of resources. These
- 6 factors should be explained in the guideline.

7 7.8 References and further reading

- 8 Anderson R (2010) Systematic reviews of economic evaluations: utility or futility?
- 9 Health Economics 19: 350–64
- 10 Ara RM, Brazier J, Peasgood T et al. (2017) The identification, review and synthesis
- of HSUV's from the literature. Pharamcoeconomics; 35 (Suppl 1):43-55.
- 12 Arber M, Garcia S, Veale T et al. (2016) Performance of search filters to identify
- health state utility studies. Value in Health; Volume 19, 7: A390–A391.
- 14 Arber M, Garcia S, Veale T et al. (2017) Performance of Ovid MEDLINE search
- filters to identify health state utility studies. International Journal of Technology
- 16 Assessment in Health Care 33: 472–80.
- 17 Brennan A, Chick SE, Davies R (2006) A taxonomy of model structures for economic
- evaluation of health technologies. Health Economics 15: 1295–1310.
- 19 Briggs A, Claxton K, Sculpher K (2006) Decision modelling for health economic
- 20 evaluation. Oxford: Oxford University Press
- 21 Caro JJ, Möller J (2016) Advantages and disadvantages of discrete-event simulation
- 22 for health economic analyses. Expert Review of Pharmacoeconomics and Outcomes
- 23 Research 16: 327-9
- 24 Centre for Reviews and Dissemination (2007) NHS economic evaluation database
- 25 handbook [online]. NHS economic evaluation database handbook
- 26 Chiou CF, Hay JW, Wallace JF et al. (2003) Development and validation of a grading
- 27 system for the quality of cost-effectiveness studies. Medical Care 41: 32–44

- 1 Cooper NJ, Sutton AJ, Ades AE et al. (2007) <u>Use of evidence in economic decision</u>
- 2 models: practical issues and methodological challenges. Health Economics 16:
- 3 1277–86
- 4 Department of Energy and Climate Change (2014) Quality assurance: guidance for
- 5 models.
- 6 Drummond MF, Jefferson TO (1996) Guidelines for authors and peer reviewers of
- 7 economic submissions to the BMJ. British Medical Journal 313: 275–83
- 8 Drummond MF, O'Brien B, Stoddart GL et al. (1997) Critical assessment of
- 9 economic evaluation. In: Methods for the economic evaluation of health care
- programmes, 2nd edition. Oxford: Oxford Medical Publications
- Drummond MF, McGuire A (2001) Economic evaluation in health care: merging
- 12 theory with practice. Oxford: Oxford University Press
- Drummond MF, Sculpher MJ, Torrance GW et al. (2005) Methods for the economic
- evaluation of health care programmes, 3rd edition. Oxford: Oxford University Press
- 15 Eccles M, Mason J (2001) How to develop cost-conscious guidelines. Health
- 16 Technology Assessment 5: 1–69
- 17 Evers SMAA, Goossens M, de Vet H et al. (2005) Criteria list for assessment of
- 18 methodological quality of economic evaluations: consensus on health economic
- 19 <u>criteria</u>. International Journal of Technology Assessment in Health Care 21: 240–5
- 20 Golder S, Glanville J, Ginnelly L (2005) Populating decision-analytic models: the
- 21 feasibility and efficiency of database searching for individual parameters.
- 22 International Journal of Technology Assessment in Health Care 21: 305–11
- Hernandez Alava M, Wailoo A, Pudney S (2017) Methods for mapping between the
- 24 EQ-5D-5L and the 3L. NICE Decision Support Unit report [online; accessed 31 July
- 25 2017]
- 26 HM Treasury (2015) The Aqua Book: guidance on producing quality analysis for
- 27 <u>government</u>. [online; accessed 20 February 2018]

- 1 HM Treasury (2013) Review of quality assurance of government analytical models:
- 2 <u>final report</u>.[online; accessed 20 February 2018]
- 3 Husereau D, Drummond M, Petrou S et al. (2013) Consolidated Health Economic
- 4 Evaluation Reporting Standards (CHEERS) statement. British Medical Journal 346: 1
- 5 Jackson CH, Bojke L, Thompson G et al. (2011) A framework for addressing
- 6 structural uncertainty in decision models. Medical Decision Making 31: 662–74
- 7 Kaltenthaler E, Tappenden P, Paisley S (2011) NICE DSU Technical Support
- 8 document 13: <u>identifying and reviewing evidence to inform the conceptualisation and</u>
- 9 population of cost-effectiveness models. [online; accessed 19 September 2017]
- 10 Krahn MD, Naglie G, Naimark D et al. (1997) Primer on medical decision analysis:
- 11 Part 4 analyzing the model and interpreting the results. Medical Decision Making
- 12 17: 142–51
- Longworth L, Rowen D (2011) NICE DSU Technical Support document 10: the use
- of mapping methods to estimate health state utility values. [online; accessed 30
- 15 January 2018]
- National Audit Office (2016). <u>Framework to review models</u>. [online; accessed 20
- 17 February 2018]
- 18 NHS Centre for Reviews and Dissemination (2001) Improving access to
- 19 cost-effectiveness information for health care decision making: the NHS Economic
- 20 Evaluation Database. CRD report number 6, 2nd edition. York: NHS Centre for
- 21 Reviews and Dissemination, University of York.
- 22 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (2012) Social care guidance
- 23 development methodology workshop December 2011: report on group discussions
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2017) Assessing resource impact
- 25 process manual: guidelines
- 26 NICE Decision Support Unit (2011) <u>Technical support document series</u> [accessed 18
- 27 December 2017]

- 1 Paisley S (2016) Identification of evidence for key parameters in decision-analytic
- 2 models of cost-effectiveness: a description of sources and a recommended minimum
- 3 search requirement. Pharmacoeconomics 34: 597–608
- 4 Papaioannou D, Brazier JE, Paisley S (2011) NICE DSU Technical Support
- 5 document 9: the identification, review and synthesis of health state utility values from
- 6 <u>the literature</u>. [online; accessed 20 February 2018]
- 7 Philips Z, Ginnelly L, Sculpher M et al. (2004) Review of good practice in decision-
- 8 <u>analytic modelling in health technology assessment</u>. Health Technology Assessment
- 9 8: 1–158
- 10 Raftery J, editor (1999–2001) Economics notes series. British Medical Journal
- 11 [accessed 27 January 2014]
- 12 Van Hout B, Janssen M, Feng Y et al. (2012) Interim scoring for the EQ-5D-5L:
- mapping the EQ-5D-5L to EQ-5D-3L value sets. Value in Health 15: 708–15
- 14 Wanless D (2004) Securing good health for the whole population. London: HM
- 15 Treasury
- Wood H, Arber M, Isojarvi J et al. (2017) Sources used to find studies for systematic
- 17 review of economic evaluations. Presentation at the HTAi Annual Meeting. Rome,
- 18 Italy, June 17 to 21 2017

19

8 Linking to other guidance

- 2 This chapter describes how guidelines link to other NICE guidance in the topic area
- 3 and to guidance from other developers.

1

- 4 Related NICE guidelines, technology appraisal guidance, interventional procedures
- 5 (IP) guidance and diagnostic and medical technologies guidance should be identified
- 6 during scoping of a guideline (see chapter 2), or when checking if a guideline needs
- 7 updating (see chapter 13). This includes identifying any related guidance or
- 8 guidelines in development, as well as those that are published.

9 8.1 Related NICE technology appraisal guidance

- 10 A guideline committee cannot publish its own recommendations on technologies or
- treatments covered by technology appraisal guidance that is published or in
- development, unless NICE has agreed that the technology appraisal guidance will be
- 13 updated in the guideline.
- 14 Sharing of information between NICE's technology appraisals team and the
- committee developing the guideline is important for both:
- A member of NICE's technology appraisals team advises the guideline committee
- on integrating the appraisal into the guideline, and is invited to attend guideline
- committee meetings as appropriate.
- The guideline committee comments on the relevant appraisal(s) through the
- 20 developer (see <u>technology appraisal process guide</u>).
- The guideline committee chair and the developer liaise with the technical lead for
- 22 the appraisal. They attend relevant appraisal committee meetings as advisers, but
- do not take part in the formal decision-making. If the chair has a conflict of
- interest, another guideline committee member will be selected to attend.
- For multiple technology appraisals (MTAs), the guideline developer's economists
- and the appraisal assessment group's economists work together to ensure that
- the economic models for the guideline and the appraisal are consistent.
- For single technology appraisals (STAs), the guideline developer's economist
- familiarise themselves with any economic model from the company and the

- critique of the model by the evidence review group working on the technology
- 2 appraisal.

3 Published technology appraisal guidance

- 4 When related technology appraisal guidance is identified, the usual approach is for
- 5 the guideline to make a recommendation to follow the technology appraisal
- 6 recommendations with a link to where these appear in the NICE Pathway (everything
- 7 NICE has said on the topic). If needed, a brief explanation can be included in the
- 8 guideline recommendation, for example, if it covers the sequencing of treatments
- 9 recommended in technology appraisals. Any explanation needs to be agreed with
- the technology appraisals team.
- In rare cases, technology appraisal recommendations may be included in the
- guideline, for example, if this is essential for readability or there is a need to highlight
- 13 specific recommendations.
- 14 Sometimes a guideline covers a medicine for which there is technology appraisal
- guidance, but for a different population or indication (condition). In these cases, the
- 16 committee developing the guideline recommendation should assess evidence of
- 17 effectiveness using methods described in this manual. The guideline
- recommendations may be different from the technology appraisal recommendations
- if there is evidence of differing safety or effectiveness for the population or
- 20 indications covered by the guideline.

21

22

Updating technology appraisal guidance

- 23 If there is evidence that a technology appraisal needs updating, the NICE technology
- 24 appraisals team prepares a technology appraisal review proposal. This involves
- consulting with the stakeholders for the technology appraisal guidance, in line with
- the <u>technology appraisal process guide</u>. The guideline <u>developer</u> also comments on
- the review proposal.
- Usually, technology appraisal guidance will be updated through the technology
- appraisals process, but sometimes it is done as part of guideline development.
- 30 Technology appraisal guidance with recommendations within the Cancer Drugs

- 1 Fund is always updated through the technology appraisals process. If a technology
- 2 appraisal is updated in a guideline, the funding requirement (the requirement for the
- 3 NHS to fund recommended technologies) no longer applies.
- 4 A technology appraisal is updated in a guideline only if it meets the conditions listed
- 5 in the policy on updating technology appraisals in guidelines. .
- 6 NICE's Guidance Executive makes the final decision on whether to update
- 7 technology appraisal guidance, and whether this should be done through the
- 8 technology appraisal process or in the guideline.
- 9 If the decision is to update the technology appraisal through the technology appraisal
- process, the guideline developer may comment on the update.
- 11 For appraisals in development, NICE's technology appraisal team may use the
- 12 appraisal consultation period as an opportunity to consult on plans for a future
- update or incorporation within a guideline.

14 Updating a technology appraisal in a guideline

- Early planning is essential to identify how the guideline developer will update
- technology appraisal guidance within a guideline. The developer should consider
- whether there are any data not in the public domain that are likely to be useful. If so,
- they should call for evidence from registered stakeholders, using the procedures
- 19 described in section 5.5.
- 20 If there is significant new evidence or a change in costs since the technology
- 21 appraisal guidance was published, the developer assesses cost effectiveness
- 22 (performs an economic analysis) to determine whether a change in the
- 23 recommendations is appropriate. In exceptional circumstances, it may not be clear
- 24 that an economic analysis is needed until the evidence is reviewed and discussed by
- 25 the committee. Nevertheless, the developer should start planning for any economic
- 26 analysis at an early stage. The intended approach to cost-effectiveness (economic)
- 27 analysis for technology appraisal updates should be included in the economic plan
- and discussed with the committee and a member of NICE staff with responsibility for
- 29 quality assurance.

- 1 The approach should follow the principles described in chapter 7 and should be
- 2 similar to that used in the technology appraisal. Any differences must be justified by
- 3 changes in the evidence base or the decision context (for example, a broader range
- 4 of comparators in the guideline).
- 5 The developer may sometimes consider that cost effectiveness can best be
- 6 assessed by modifying or building on the architecture of an existing economic
- 7 analysis from the technology appraisal. If so, this should be discussed with a
- 8 member of NICE staff with responsibility for quality assurance during development of
- 9 the economic plan.
- When technology appraisal guidance is updated and changed in a guideline, the
- appraisal is withdrawn when the guideline is published. The funding requirement
- 12 associated with the technology appraisal no longer applies. Any patient access
- scheme agreed as part of the technology appraisal usually still applies.

14 Significant new medicines

- 15 A first assessment of a new medicine or a significant new indication for an existing
- medicine is usually carried out as a technology appraisal. However, it can be carried
- out using the guideline development process, as long as this has been agreed by
- both the Department of Health and Social Care and the company.

19 Developing a guideline and technology appraisal guidance concurrently

- When a technology appraisal is developed at the same time as a related NICE
- 21 guideline, 3 important aspects should be considered to ensure that the final
- 22 recommendations in the guideline and the appraisal are complementary and
- 23 consistent:
- 24 timing
- exchange of information
- publication of recommendations.
- 27 The development of a related guideline and technology appraisal should ideally be
- coordinated so that the appraisal recommendations are published in time for a link to
- be included in the consultation draft of the guideline. This is not always possible (for
- 30 example, if the technology has not yet received a marketing authorisation). In this

- case, the guideline consultation draft should link to the appraisal consultation
- 2 document or final appraisal determination. Timelines should be agreed between the
- developer, NICE staff with responsibility for quality assurance of guidelines, and the
- 4 technology appraisals team at NICE.

5 New technology appraisal referral during development of the guideline

- 6 When a new related technology appraisal is referred after the guideline has started
- 7 development, and will be developed alongside the guideline, NICE's technology
- 8 appraisals team informs the developer and NICE staff with responsibility for guideline
- 9 quality assurance.

10

8.2 Related NICE guidelines

- Related published or in development NICE guidelines should be identified by the
- developer at the scoping stage, or by the NICE surveillance team when checking if a
- guideline needs updating (see chapter 13). The scope should document which NICE
- 14 guidelines are considered relevant for the guideline that is being developed. Any
- other related NICE guidelines that are highlighted during guideline development
- should be discussed, and a joint approach agreed with NICE staff with responsibility
- 17 for quality assurance.
- During scoping, identified related guidelines should be reviewed to determine
- whether the guideline in development will link to existing published recommendations
- 20 (that is, the key issue(s) will be excluded from the scope of the guideline in
- development) or whether the guideline in development will consider similar review
- 22 questions (that is, the key issues are included in the scope of the guideline in
- 23 development).
- When a guideline in development will link to recommendations in a published
- 25 guideline, this will be specified in the scope.

26 Similar review question covered in another guideline

- When a similar review question is identified in a published NICE guideline, and the
- 28 evidence review underpinning any recommendations is considered appropriate, the
- 29 committee developing the guideline can choose to link to the recommendations in
- the published guideline or to draft new recommendations, based on the evidence
- 31 review for the published guideline.

- 1 In these cases, the committee should discuss and document whether:
- the review question in the guideline in development is similar enough to the
- 3 question addressed in the published guideline
- the evidence base underpinning any recommendations is unlikely to have
- 5 changed significantly since the publication of the related guideline
- the evidence review for the review question in the published guideline is relevant
- and appropriate to the question in the guideline in development.
- 8 If the committee agree that the evidence review is relevant for the guideline in
- 9 development, they consider the recommendations based on the evidence review.
- 10 There are 3 options in these circumstances and these are described below.

Link to the recommendations in the other guideline

- 12 If the committee are happy to accept the intent and exact wording of the
- recommendations, and understand that any future changes (for example, as part of
- an update) would also apply to their guideline, then the guideline will link to the
- recommendations in the published guideline. If needed, a recommendation can be
- added to the guideline explaining anything users will need to take into account when
- applying the recommendations from the published guideline (for example, if some
- parts of a recommendation do not apply to the population or setting covered by the
- 19 new guideline). The committee's discussion and decision should be documented
- 20 clearly in the guideline. This should include areas of agreement and difference with
- 21 the committee for the published guideline (for example, in terms of key
- 22 considerations balance of benefits and harms or costs, and interpretation of the
- 23 evidence).

28

11

- 24 Linking to other guidelines is preferred to copying recommendations into the
- 25 guideline in development. In rare cases, recommendations may be copied into the
- 26 quideline, for example, if this is essential for readability or there is a need to highlight
- 27 specific recommendations.

Use the evidence review to make new recommendations

- 29 If the committee considers that the intent and wording of the published
- 30 recommendations are not appropriate for their guideline, or are not prepared to

- agree that any updates to recommendations would also apply to their guideline, they
- 2 may make new recommendations based on the existing evidence review. When
- 3 evidence reviews from another guideline are used to develop new recommendations,
- 4 the decision should be made clear in the in the methods section of the guideline, and
- 5 their independent interpretation and discussion of the evidence should be
- 6 documented in the discussion section. The evidence reviews from the published
- 7 guideline (including review protocol, search strategy, evidence tables and full
- 8 evidence profiles [if available]) should be included in the guideline. They then
- 9 become part of the whole evidence base for the guideline, and are updated as
- needed in future updates of the guideline.

Request a new evidence review

11

18

- 12 If the review question is not considered similar enough or the evidence review is not
- considered appropriate, the committee may request that a new evidence review is
- conducted. This should follow NICE's standard processes and methods, as
- described in this manual. The decision to conduct a new review should be agreed by
- NICE staff with responsibility for quality assurance, and documented in the methods
- section and the discussion section for the review question.

8.3 Related interventional procedures guidance

- 19 Interventional procedures (IP) guidance differs from other NICE guidance in that it
- addresses the safety and efficacy of interventions, and not their effectiveness or cost
- 21 effectiveness. (For more details see the IP programme process guide.)
- 22 Any related published IP guidance should be identified during the scoping of a
- 23 guideline or by the surveillance review. The approach depends on whether the
- recommendation in the IP guidance is for 'standard' (previously known as 'normal')
- or 'special' arrangements for clinical governance, consent and audit or research (see
- 26 more details on interventional procedures recommendations below). Because
- 27 guidelines focus on placing established treatments in the care pathway, they will
- generally only include IP guidance that recommends 'standard' arrangements.
- 29 If IP guidance on a procedure relevant to a guideline starts development during
- development of the guideline, the IP programme will send the finalised scope(s) for

- the procedure(s) to NICE staff with responsibility for quality assurance of the
- 2 guideline.
- 3 IP guidance with recommendations for 'standard' arrangements

4 Review question is not justified

- 5 If the scoping group for a guideline decides that IP guidance for which 'standard'
- 6 arrangements (previously known as normal arrangements) are recommended is
- 7 relevant to the guideline but does not justify a review question, the guideline simply
- 8 links to the IP guidance in the NICE Pathway. The developer does not search for
- 9 new evidence on procedures that are not incorporated into a review question.
- However, if in the course of their search for evidence for the guideline the developer
- 11 finds new relevant evidence on that procedure, they inform the IP team at NICE.

12 Review question is justified

- 13 If the scoping group for a new guideline considers that IP guidance with 'standard'
- arrangements is likely to justify a review question, this is highlighted in the scope for
- the guideline. For example, comparisons of clinical and cost effectiveness could be
- included if there is IP guidance covering several procedures for the same condition.
- 17 The IP team is contacted by NICE staff with responsibility for guideline quality
- assurance during scoping to seek their input on the proposed approach.
- 19 If the procedure is included in the final scope of the guideline, the developer
- 20 considers its effectiveness using standard methods for guideline development (see
- chapters $\underline{6}$ and $\underline{7}$).
- 22 If a guideline is being updated and the surveillance review identifies that IP guidance
- with 'standard' arrangements is likely to justify a review question in the updated
- 24 guideline, this is highlighted in the surveillance report.
- 25 When a review question in a guideline relates to IP guidance, the IP guidance
- remains active unless the IP team and NICE staff with responsibility for guideline
- 27 quality assurance have identified reasons for not doing so. This is because the IP
- 28 guidance relates to the efficacy and safety of the procedure, and so the guideline
- 29 and the IP guidance address different questions. Therefore IP guidance remains
- 30 current even if the recommendations are supplemented by a guideline

- 1 recommendation on the effectiveness of a procedure for 1 or more indications. IP
- 2 guidance may also contain more detailed information that may be of value to
- 3 practitioners and people considering having the procedure. Importantly, the IP
- 4 guidance may also specify conditions for use of the procedure; for example, that the
- 5 surgeon should have training, or that the procedure should be carried out within the
- 6 context of a multidisciplinary team. The guideline will link to the IP guidance in the
- 7 NICE Pathway, and the NICE webpage for the IP guidance will include a link to the
- 8 guideline.

9 Other approaches

- 10 If NICE staff with responsibility for guideline quality assurance and the IP team agree
- that a different approach is needed, they present a paper to NICE's Guidance
- 12 Executive. Decisions to take other approaches are made on a case-by-case basis.
- 13 Examples include:
- Appraisal of the evidence indicates that a procedure with IP guidance is not
- effective, and the guideline recommends that it should not be used.
- There is considerable uncertainty about the clinical or cost effectiveness of a
- 17 procedure.
- The guideline committee makes a 'research only' recommendation for a
- procedure with published IP recommendations for 'standard' arrangements.
- 20 IP guidance with recommendations for 'special' arrangements
- 21 If the guideline committee considers that a procedure with recommendations for
- 22 'special' arrangements has become part of NHS practice and falls into the area of a
- 23 review question, the committee notifies the procedure to the IP team for potential
- review of the IP guidance. If the guidance is reviewed and the procedure's status is
- changed to 'standard' arrangements, the developer considers the procedure's
- 26 effectiveness and cost effectiveness (see the section on IP guidance with
- 27 <u>recommendations for 'standard' arrangements</u>). If the procedure retains its 'special'
- arrangements status, the guideline should link to the IP guidance in the NICE
- 29 Pathway.
- 30 IP guidance with recommendations for 'research only' or 'do not use'
- 31 Sometimes IP guidance recommends that a procedure should only be carried out in
- research, or that it should not be used. A recommendation not to use a procedure is

- 1 made if there is no evidence of efficacy and/or safety, or evidence of a lack of
- 2 efficacy and/or safety. A 'research only' recommendation is made if the evidence
- 3 shows that there are important uncertainties. The evidence base for procedures with
- 4 recommendations for 'research only' or 'do not use' usually reflects the fact that they
- 5 are not established procedures. As such, they would not normally form part of a
- 6 review question in a guideline.

7 Developing a guideline and IP guidance concurrently

- 8 When a newly notified procedure has been scoped and it has been agreed that it will
- 9 be assessed by the IP team, the IP team informs the developer and NICE staff with
- 10 responsibility for guideline quality assurance that the notified procedure is relevant to
- the guideline. The guideline can link to the IP guidance when it is published.

8.4 Guidance from other developers

- Sometimes relevant guidelines published by organisations other than NICE are
- identified in the search for evidence and considered appropriate for inclusion in the
- evidence base. Guidelines produced by organisations accredited by NICE are not
- subject to further appraisal of the guideline development process because this has
- already been assessed by NICE. However, the evidence reviews in the guideline will
- still need to be critically appraised (using checklists in appendix H) to ensure that the
- 19 quality of the evidence is appropriate for deriving NICE recommendations.
- 20 Published guidelines produced by organisations not accredited by NICE are
- 21 assessed for quality using the AGREE II instrument or the AGREE global rating
- scale instrument. There is no cut-off point for accepting or rejecting a guideline, and
- each committee needs to set its own parameters. These should be documented in
- the methods of the guideline, and a summary of the assessment included in the
- evidence review. The full results of the assessment should be presented with the
- 26 guideline.

12

- 27 Reviews of evidence from other guidelines that cover review questions being
- addressed by the committee may be considered as evidence if they are:
- assessed as being of high quality using the appropriate methodology checklist
- 30 (see appendix H)

- accompanied by a GRADE table, GRADE-CERQual table or evidence statement
- 2 and evidence table(s)
- assessed as being sufficiently up-to-date.
- 4 If using evidence from published guidelines, the committee should create its own
- 5 evidence summaries or statements (see section 6.4). Evidence tables from
- 6 guidelines published by other organisations should be referenced with a direct link to
- 7 the source website or a full reference of the published document. The committee
- 8 should formulate its own recommendations, taking into consideration the whole body
- 9 of evidence.
- 10 Recommendations from guidelines published by another organisation should not be
- 11 quoted or linked to, unless the organisation's process has been accredited by NICE
- and the evidence reviews have been critically appraised to verify quality.

13 **8.5 References and further reading**

- Brouwers MC, Kho ME, Browman GP et al. (2010) AGREE II: advancing guideline
- development, reporting and evaluation in health care. Canadian Medical Association
- 16 Journal 182: E839–42

17

9 Writing the guideline

- 2 During development of the guideline, the developer and committee will write:
- the recommendations

1

- recommendations for research
- the rationale for the recommendations, and their likely impact on practice
- the context for the guideline such as the need for the guideline, or the reason for
 updating an existing guideline
- 8 summaries of evidence supporting shared decision-making, if there are
- 9 preference-sensitive decision points in the guideline
- information about changes to published recommendations (if the guideline is an update)
- structured summaries of the committee's discussions
- summaries of the evidence with details of analysis and any modelling
- the methods used for guideline development highlighting the reasons for options
- taken, and any deviations from the methods and processes described in this
- manual.

23

- 17 For publication, the recommendations, recommendations for research, rationale for
- the recommendations and likely impact, context, and any summaries of evidence
- supporting shared decision-making are presented in a 'web version'. The
- 20 committee's discussion and evidence are presented as PDFs in separate evidence
- 21 reviews, along with the methods used during guideline development. Exactly how we
- organise and present the information is likely to change in future.

9.1 Interpreting the evidence to make recommendations

- 24 Assessment and interpretation of the evidence to inform guideline recommendations
- is at the heart of the work of the committee. Recommendations are developed using
- 26 a range of scientific evidence (see section 4.4) and other evidence such as expert
- testimony, views of stakeholders, people using services and practitioners, and the
- committee's discussions and debate (see chapter 3). Sometimes recommendations
- are made because of a legal duty or the consequences of not following a course of
- 30 action are extremely serious. If there is a legal duty, the recommendation should

- refer to supporting documents and should build on the law or statutory guidance
- 2 rather than simply repeating it.
- 3 The committee must use its judgement to decide what the evidence means in the
- 4 context of the guideline referral and decide what recommendations can be made to
- 5 practitioners, commissioners of services and others. The strength and quality of the
- 6 evidence is assessed for both internal and external validity, but also requires
- 7 interpretation. Evidence also needs to be assessed in light of any conceptual
- 8 framework.
- 9 As soon as the committee has discussed the evidence, they should start drafting
- 10 recommendations. They should decide what action to recommend and keep in mind
- which sectors (including which practitioners or commissioners within those sectors)
- should act on the recommendations. The record of the committee's discussion
- should explain clearly how they moved from the evidence to each recommendation,
- and document how any issues influenced their decision-making. In line with the
- 15 GRADE principles on 'evidence to decisions', summaries of the discussions should
- describe the relative value placed on outcomes, benefits and harms, resource use,
- and the overall quality of the evidence, as well as other considerations (see Alonso-
- 18 Coello et al. 2016, Schünemann 2016).
- 19 Findings from several evidence reviews may be integrated into a single summary of
- 20 the committee's discussions if they relate to the same recommendation or group of
- 21 recommendations.
- 22 For each group of recommendations, the committee should briefly explain their
- 23 rationale for making the recommendations and record their views on any likely
- 24 impact of the recommendations on practice or services.

25 Quality of the evidence

- 26 The committee is presented with GRADE tables, GRADE-CERQual tables or (if
- 27 GRADE or GRADE-CERQual is not used) evidence statements. These describe the
- 28 number, type and quality of the studies for each review question and provide an
- 29 overall rating of confidence (high, moderate, low or very low) in estimates of effect
- for each outcome. The committee should agree that the reviews are a fair summary

- of the evidence and should discuss any uncertainty, including the presence, likely
- 2 magnitude and direction of potential biases.
- 3 GRADE tables, GRADE-CERQual tables or the summary of the committee's
- 4 discussion should include the committee's view of the directness (or applicability) of
- 5 the evidence to people affected by the guideline and the setting.

6 Trade-off between benefits and harms of an intervention

- 7 A key stage in moving from evidence to recommendations is weighing up the
- 8 magnitude and importance of the benefits and harms of an intervention, and the
- 9 potential for unintended consequences. This may be done qualitatively (for example,
- 10 'the evidence of a reduction in medicines errors in care homes outweighed a small
- increase in staff workload and resources') or quantitatively using a decision model.
- 12 The committee should assess the extent to which the available evidence is about
- efficacy (the extent to which an intervention produces a beneficial result under
- controlled experimental conditions), effectiveness (the extent to which a specific
- intervention, when used under 'real world' circumstances, does what it is intended to
- do) or both. Often the distinction between the 2 is not clear; this may be of particular
- importance in reports of complex interventions, because these are often evaluated
- only in pragmatic studies.
- 19 If several possible interventions are being considered, it is useful to include details of
- 20 the committee's discussion of the relative position of interventions within a pathway
- 21 of care or service model.
- 22 The committee should also assess whether, when recommending an intervention,
- 23 they are able to recommend stopping other interventions because they have been
- superseded by the new one.
- 25 The committee should also assess the extent to which the recommendations may
- impact on health inequalities. This needs to be made clear, regardless of whether
- 27 the recommendation is aimed at the whole population, specific subgroups or a
- 28 combination of both.

1 Trade-off between economic considerations and resource use

- 2 As noted in section 7.7, the committee should discuss cost effectiveness at the same
- 3 time as effectiveness when formulating recommendations.
- 4 The guideline should include an explanation of how the implications of costs,
- 5 resource use and economic considerations were taken into account in determining
- 6 the cost effectiveness of an intervention. This may be informal, or may be more
- 7 formal and include economic modelling (see chapter 7).
- 8 If several possible interventions are being considered, it is useful to include the
- 9 committee's discussion of the relative position of an intervention in a care pathway or
- service model, based on cost effectiveness.

Use of indirect evidence

- 12 Sometimes when there is no evidence directly relevant to a specific population or
- setting indirect evidence from other populations or settings may be considered. For
- example, a review of systems for managing medicines in care homes for people with
- dementia may identify good practice that is relevant in other care home settings. The
- use of indirect evidence must be considered carefully by the committee, with explicit
- 17 consideration of the features of the condition or interventions that allow extrapolation
- to a different context or population. This also applies when extrapolating findings
- 19 from evidence in different care settings (for example, between primary and
- secondary care). The committee should consider and document any similarities in
- case mix, staffing, facilities and processes, and any limitations.

22 Availability of evidence to support implementation (including evidence from

23 practice)

11

- 24 The committee should also judge to what extent it will be feasible to put the
- recommendations into practice. They can use expert oral or written testimony, the
- 26 experience of committee members or results from other approaches (see chapter 10
- 27 and appendix B) if these have been used. They may also be able to draw on
- 28 qualitative studies or other forms of evidence relating to organisational and political
- 29 processes where appropriate.
- 30 The committee should consider the extent of change in practice that will be needed
- to implement a recommendation, staff training needs, policy levers and funding
- 32 streams, and the possible need for carefully controlled implementation with, for

- 1 example, training programmes. This should be documented in the guideline and in
- 2 any resources to support implementation.

3 Size of effect and potential impact on population health

- 4 The committee should consider whether it is possible to anticipate effect sizes at the
- 5 population level, if this is appropriate for the topic. If this is the case, it is important to
- 6 consider effect sizes along the whole causal chain, not just at the end points.

7 Wider basis for making recommendations

- 8 The committee should take into account a range of issues (including any ethical
- 9 issues, social value judgements, equity considerations and inequalities in outcomes)
- and policy imperatives, as well as equality legislation (see chapter 1) to ensure that
- the guideline recommendations are ethical, practical and specific. There are no
- hard-and-fast rules or mechanisms for doing this: the committee should make
- conscious and explicit use of its members' skills and expertise. All evidence needs
- interpretation: evidence alone cannot determine the content of a recommendation.
- 15 The development of evidence-based recommendations involves inductive or
- 16 deductive reasoning:
- inductive because it involves using what is known (the evidence) while accepting
- that there is uncertainty about what is reasonably expected to happen as a
- 19 consequence of implementing a recommendation
- deductive when it is drawn from theory or methodological principles that are
- 21 generally held to be true so that any logical conclusion will be true.
- 22 NICE's principles on social value judgements explicitly acknowledge that
- 23 non-scientific values are brought to bear, and all of NICE's advisory committees are
- 24 encouraged to take account of (and to make explicit) the value judgments they
- 25 make. The committee may also draw on the principles outlined in the report on
- 26 <u>ethical issues in public health</u> by the Nuffield Council on Bioethics when making its
- 27 judgements.

28

Conceptual framework or logic model

- 29 When the committee is developing its recommendations, it should consider any
- 30 conceptual frameworks or logic models that have been used to inform the guideline

- because these may help to identify any practical issues involved with a
- 2 recommendation that will change practice.

3 Equality considerations

- 4 The guideline should also document how the committee's responsibilities under
- 5 equality legislation and NICE's equality policy have been discharged in reaching the
- 6 recommendations (see section 1.4), and how the recommendations address areas
- 7 highlighted in the equality impact assessment. The committee needs to consider
- 8 whether:
- the evidence review has addressed areas identified in the scope as needing
 specific attention with regard to equality issues
- criteria for access to an intervention might be discriminatory (for example, through
- membership of a particular group, or by using an assessment tool that might
- discriminate unlawfully)
- any groups of people might find it impossible or unreasonably difficult to receive or
- 15 access an intervention
- recommendations can be formulated to advance equality (for example, by making
- access more likely for certain groups, or by tailoring the intervention to specific
- groups).

19 Insufficient evidence

- 20 If evidence of efficacy or effectiveness for an intervention is either lacking or too low
- 21 quality for firm conclusions to be reached, the committee has several options. It may:
- make a 'consider' recommendation based on the limited evidence (see section
- 23 9.2)
- decide not to make a recommendation, and make a recommendation for research
- 25 (see section 9.4)
- recommend that the intervention is used only in the context of research
- recommend not to offer the intervention.
- Factors the committee should consider before making a 'do not offer'
- 29 recommendation include:

- The intervention should have no reasonable prospect of providing cost-effective
- 2 benefits to people using services.
- Stopping the intervention is not likely to cause harm for people currently receiving
- 4 it.
- 5 Factors the committee should consider before issuing 'only in research'
- 6 recommendations include:
- 7 The necessary research can realistically be set up or is already planned, or
- 8 people using services are already being recruited for a study.
- The intervention should have a reasonable prospect of providing cost-effective
- benefits to people using services.
- There is a real prospect that the research will inform future NICE guidelines.
- 12 The principles for wording recommendations should be used (see <u>section 9.2</u>),
- reflecting the strength of the evidence, and the committee's discussion and the
- 14 rationale should be documented fully.

15 Strength of recommendations

- The concept of the 'strength' of a recommendation (Guyatt et al. 2003) is key to
- 17 translating evidence into recommendations. This takes into account the quality of the
- 18 evidence but is conceptually different.
- 19 Some recommendations are 'strong' in that the committee believes that the vast
- 20 majority of practitioners or commissioners and people using services would choose a
- 21 particular intervention if they considered the evidence in the same way as the
- committee. This is generally the case if the benefits clearly outweigh the harms for
- 23 most people and the intervention is likely to be cost effective. Similarly, if the
- committee believes that the vast majority of practitioners or commissioners and
- 25 people using services would not choose a particular intervention if they considered
- the evidence in the same way as the committee, a negative recommendation can be
- 27 made (that is, 'Do not offer'). This is generally the case if the harms clearly outweigh
- the benefits for most people, or the intervention is not likely to be cost effective.
- However, there is often a closer balance between benefits and harms, and some
- people would not choose an intervention whereas others would. This may happen,

- for example, if some people are particularly likely to benefit and others are not, or
- 2 people have different preferences and values. In these circumstances, the
- 3 recommendation is generally weaker, although it may be possible to make stronger
- 4 recommendations for specific groups of people. The committee should also discuss
- 5 making negative recommendations in such situations if they believe most people are
- 6 particularly likely to experience no benefit or experience harm, but that there may be
- 7 a benefit for some. Be as specific as possible about the circumstances (for example,
- 8 'Do not offer..., unless...') or population. If possible, avoid using vague phrases such
- 9 as 'Do not routinely...'.
- NICE reflects the strength of the recommendation in the wording (see <u>section 9.2</u>).
- NICE uses 'offer' (or words such as 'measure', 'advise', or 'refer') to reflect a strong
- recommendation, usually where there is clear evidence of benefit. NICE uses
- 13 'consider' to reflect a recommendation for which the evidence of benefit is less
- 14 certain.
- 15 There might be little evidence of differences in cost effectiveness between
- interventions. However, interventions that are not considered cost effective should
- 17 not usually be offered to people because that course of action has been judged to be
- an inefficient use of limited resources, with the population as a whole gaining fewer
- benefits than from alternative (cost-effective) courses of action (see chapter 7).
- 20 The committee's view of the strength of a recommendation should be clear from its
- 21 discussions, and reported in the guideline.
- 22 In most cases the committee reaches decisions through a process of informal
- consensus, but sometimes formal voting procedures are used. The proceedings
- 24 should be recorded and a clear statement made about the factors considered and
- 25 the methods used to achieve consensus. This ensures that the process is as
- transparent as possible. A structured summary of the generic and specific issues
- 27 considered and the key deliberations should be included in the guideline.

Principles of person-centred care

- 29 All NICE guidelines advocate the principles of person-centred care: people using
- 30 services and the wider public should be informed of their options and be involved in
- 31 decisions about their care.

28

- 1 There are 3 NICE guidelines specifically on the experience of people using services:
- 2 Patient experience in adult NHS services, Service user experience in adult mental
- 3 health and People's experience in adult social care services. These include general
- 4 recommendations on the principles of person-centred care, such as communication
- 5 and providing information, which should not be restated in topic-specific guidelines.
- 6 However, recommendations on person-centred care can be included in topic-specific
- 7 guidelines if there is evidence of specific need for the topic.

9.2 Wording the recommendations

- 9 This section gives the principles of writing recommendations. The principles are
- explained in more detail in the writing guide. For more on NICE style, see the style
- 11 guide and writing for NICE.
- 12 Focus on the action and what readers need to know
- Recommendations should be clear about what needs to be done, without the reader
- having to read the committee's discussion of the evidence. When writing
- recommendations, keep in mind a reader asking, 'What does this mean for me?'
- 16 Include only one action per recommendation or bullet point, and use direct
- instructions wherever possible because these are easier to follow.
- Recommendations often start with a verb such as 'offer' (or 'do not'), 'consider',
- 19 'measure', 'advise', 'discuss', 'ask about'.
- 20 Exceptions to this principle include:
- Recommendations that specify who should take action, or cover service
- organisation. For example, 'A multidisciplinary team should provide care'.
- Recommendations that use 'must' or 'must not' (because of a legal duty or a very
- serious consequence of not following the recommendation).
- Recommendations to take different actions in different circumstances or for
- different populations. For example, it is often clearer to start with details of the
- 27 population covered by the recommendation.
- 28 Think carefully about how much detail to include. Recommendations should be
- 29 specific about interventions. But this needs to be balanced against the need to be

- clear and concise. Including a lot of detail can reduce the impact and make it harder
- 2 for users to identify the most important actions.
- 3 Generally, avoid making recommendations about basic good practice unless there is
- 4 evidence of poor practice or variation in practice.
- 5 Be clear about who should be offered an intervention, but don't spell this out in every
- 6 recommendation if it is obvious from the context. Similarly, readers need to know
- 7 which sections of the guideline they need to act on. Clear subheadings can help
- 8 here, for example by spelling out the setting where the recommendations apply (for
- 9 example, 'first treatment', 'in primary care' or 'in care homes'.
- 10 The content and measurability of any related NICE quality standard will be affected
- by the clarity and precision of recommendation wording. If possible, be clear when
- interventions should take place, and include the reasoning in the rationale and
- 13 discussion sections.

14 Reflect the strength of the recommendation

- 15 The 'strength' of a recommendation (see section 9.1) should be reflected in the
- 16 consistent wording of recommendations within and across guidelines.
- 17 In recommendations on activities or interventions that should (or should not) be
- offered, use directive language such as 'offer' (or 'do not offer'), 'advise', or 'ask
- 19 about'. In keeping with the principles of shared decision-making, people may choose
- whether or not to accept what they are offered or advised (see Use person-centred,
- 21 precise, concise clear English).
- 22 If there is a closer balance between benefits and harms (activities or interventions
- that could be used), use 'consider'.
- 24 If there is a legal duty to apply a recommendation, or the consequences of not
- 25 following a recommendation are extremely serious, the recommendation should use
- 26 'must' or 'must not' and be worded in the passive voice.

1 Box 9.3 Examples of recommendations made with 3 different levels of

2 certainty

Recommendations for activities or interventions that must or must not be used

- Ultra-rapid detoxification under general anaesthesia or heavy sedation (where the airway needs to be supported) must not be used. This is because of the risk of serious adverse events, including death.
- Patient group directions must be authorised only by an appropriate authorising body in line with legislation.

Recommendations for activities or interventions that should or should not be offered

- Offer a trial of supervised pelvic floor muscle training of at least 3 months' duration as a first treatment to women with stress or mixed urinary incontinence.
- If a smoker's attempt to quit is unsuccessful using NRT, varenicline or bupropion, do not offer a repeat prescription within 6 months, unless special circumstances have hampered the person's initial attempt to stop smoking, when it may be reasonable to try again sooner.
- Record the person's blood pressure every 6 months.
- Do not offer lamotrigine to treat mania.
- Do not offer tigecycline to treat diabetic foot infections, unless other antibiotics are unsuitable.

Recommendations for activities or interventions that could be offered

- Consider pelvic MRI to assess the extent of deep endometriosis involving the bowel, bladder or ureter.
- Consider collaborating with other organisations and sharing existing educational materials to ensure a comprehensive approach.

4 Use 'person-centred', precise, concise, clear English

5 Person-centred language

3

- 6 Use language that is person centred, and acknowledges the experience of people
- who are directly affected by the recommendations (and family members, carers or
- 8 advocates), and their role in decision-making. Generally use verbs such as 'offer'

178 of 210

- and 'discuss' in recommendations, rather than 'prescribe' or 'give'. Use 'people' or
- 2 'people with [condition]' (or 'patients', or 'people using services') rather than
- 3 'individuals', 'service users', 'cases' or 'subjects'.

4 Clarity and consistency

- 5 Using clear, consistent wording is an important part of NICE's approach to
- 6 presenting guidelines and other products, and is in line with gov.uk style.
- 7 Follow the principles of effective writing as described in writing for NICE and NICE's
- 8 approach to consistency in language and terms across guidelines and other
- 9 products. More information is available in the NICE style guide and our guide to
- writing recommendations.
- 11 Use bullet lists and tables if they will help make recommendations easier to read and
- follow. Make sure there is a clear link back to the evidence and the committee's
- discussion for all information in a table.

14 Recommendations on medicines, including off-label use of licensed medicines

15 **Do not give dosages routinely**

- Readers are expected to refer to the <u>summary of product characteristics</u> (SPC) for
- details of dosages for licensed indications. Include dosage information only if there is
- evidence that a particular medicine is often prescribed at the wrong dosage, or there
- 19 is clear evidence about the effectiveness of different dose levels. Information about
- dosage can be found in the BNF or BNF for Children as well as the SPC.
- 21 Dosage information for off-label use of a licensed medicine will not be included in the
- 22 SPC (see below). If off-label use is being recommended, check whether there is any
- 23 relevant dosage information in the BNF or BNF for Children for the particular
- 24 population or indication it is being recommended for. If there is no relevant dosage
- information in the BNF or BNF for Children, include details of the dosage regimen in
- the guideline.

27

Off-label use of licensed medicines

- Using a UK licensed medicine outside the terms of its marketing authorisation is
- 29 classed as off-label use.

- 1 Recommendations are usually about the uses of medicines for which the regulatory
- 2 authority has granted a marketing authorisation, either in the UK or under the
- 3 European centralised authorisation procedure (often referred to as the licensed
- 4 indications). However, there are clinical situations in which the off-label use of a
- 5 medicine may be judged by the prescriber to be in the best clinical interests of the
- 6 patient. For example, off-label use may be recommended if the clinical need cannot
- 7 be met by a licensed product and there is sufficient evidence and/or experience of
- 8 using the medicine to demonstrate its safety and efficacy to support this.
- 9 Off-label prescribing is particularly common in pregnant women and in children and
- young people (see below) because these groups have often been excluded from
- clinical trials during medicine development. When prescribing a medicine off-label,
- the prescriber should follow relevant professional guidance (for example, the
- 13 General Medical Council's Good practice in prescribing medicines guidance for
- 14 <u>doctors</u>) and make a clinical judgement, taking full responsibility for the decision for
- the patient under his or her direct care. In addition, the patient (or those with
- authority to give consent on their behalf) should be made fully aware of these factors
- and provide informed consent, which should be documented by the prescriber.
- 18 The Standing Committee on Medicines (a joint committee of the Royal College of
- 19 Paediatrics and Child Health and the Neonatal and Paediatric Pharmacists Group)
- 20 has issued a policy statement on the use of unlicensed medicines and the use of
- 21 licensed medicines for unlicensed indications in children and young people.
- 22 The guideline developer and committee should check recommended uses of a
- 23 medicine against the licensed indications listed in the SPC. If the medicine does not
- have a UK marketing authorisation for the use being recommended (off-label use),
- 25 include this information in this standard footnote to the recommendation:
- At the time of publication ([month year]), [name of drug or drug class] did not have a
- 27 UK marketing authorisation for this indication. The prescriber should follow relevant
- professional guidance, taking full responsibility for the decision. Informed consent
- should be obtained and documented. See the General Medical Council's Good
- practice in prescribing medicines guidance for doctors for further information.

9.3 Supporting shared decision-making

- 2 Identify preference-sensitive decision points
- 3 Guidelines should include information to support shared decision-making between
- 4 people and their health or social care practitioners (see NICE's recommendations
- 5 about <u>shared decision-making about medicines</u>). The committee should identify any
- 6 recommendations where someone's values and preferences are likely to be
- 7 particularly important in their decision about the best course of action for them.
- 8 When identifying these recommendations committees should take account of
- 9 people's automony and right to make individual decisions, in line with NICE's social
- value judgements. They should however ensure that their recommendations
- represent an effective use of health and social care resources and so would not
- disadvantage other people using the services (see section 4.3 of the social value)
- 13 judgements).
- 14 These 'preference-sensitive decision points' occur when the committee recommends
- 2 or more options for investigation, treatment or care that deliver similar outcomes
- 16 but:

- they have different types of harms and benefits which people may value
- differently, or
- the likelihood of the harms or benefits may differ, or
- the practicalities of the options are different (for example, the choice is between
- 21 medicine and surgery, or the requirements for monitoring differ), or
- some people may consider the overall risks of harms for any of the options
- 23 outweigh the overall benefits compared with no treatment.
- Alternatively, a preference-sensitive decision point may occur if the choice between
- an investigation, treatment or care option and 'no treatment' is finely balanced.
- 26 When to identify preference-sensitive decision points
- 27 In some cases, preference-sensitive decision points might be apparent at the
- scoping stage of a guideline. In other cases, the committee will identify them when
- 29 reviewing the evidence. This is the same evidence used to make the
- recommendations, and no additional evidence searches or syntheses are needed.

- 1 For updates, the committee only needs to identify decision points in the areas of the
- 2 guideline being updated.

3 Summarise information to support decisions

- 4 When a preference-sensitive decision point is identified, the committee should create
- 5 a summary of the evidence that will appear in the guideline. This is to make it easy
- 6 for professionals and practitioners to compare the options and discuss them with the
- 7 person.

20

- 8 This summary should set out information about the options clearly and simply. It
- 9 should usually include the option of no treatment or investigation. This could include
- 10 brief information, for each option, about:
- **efficacy or effectiveness**: how well something is likely to work for particular
- outcomes or circumstances and for particular subgroups of people
- **safety**: the risk of short- or long-term harms, and any contraindications
- practical factors relevant to people using services: people's experience of
- treatment or care for example, ease of use (route of administration for
- medicines), monitoring requirements, side effects, or impact on quality of life
- quality and certainty of the evidence: an overall judgement about the quality of
- the underlying evidence for each option.
- 19 In some cases, NICE will develop additional decision aids (see chapter 12).

9.4 Formulating research recommendations

- 21 The committee is likely to identify areas in which there are uncertainties or in which
- 22 robust evidence is lacking. NICE has published a Research recommendations
- 23 process and methods guide, which details the approach to be used to identify key
- 24 uncertainties and associated recommendations for research.
- 25 For guidelines where there could be many hundreds of uncertainties, it will not be
- possible to document every uncertainty in detail. Similarly, although committees
- 27 could write research recommendations for dealing with each uncertainty, this is not
- 28 likely to be feasible. The committee should select up to 5 key recommendations for
- research that are likely to inform future decision-making (based on a systematic
- assessment of gaps in the current evidence base). Methods such as value of

- information analyses can be useful in this process. They can also make other
- 2 recommendations for research. These will be listed in the guideline after the key
- 3 recommendations for research but will be of lower priority. Further information about
- 4 how research recommendations should be derived can be found in the research
- 5 recommendation process and methods guide.

9.5 Incorporating the guideline recommendations into NICE

7 Pathways

6

- 8 The committee and developer should refer to both the guideline scope and the NICE
- 9 Pathway outline when developing the guideline. This includes taking account of the
- 10 links to other NICE Pathways and the guidance identified as related to the guideline
- topic at the scoping stage. The committee and developer should aim for the
- guideline structure to be compatible with NICE Pathways. They should also consider
- the links with existing pathways to help integrate the new topic into NICE Pathways.

14 **9.6** References and further reading

- 15 Alonso-Coello P, Oxman AD, Moberg J et al. for the GRADE working group (2016)
- 16 GRADE Evidence to Decision (EtD) frameworks: a systematic and transparent
- approach to making well informed healthcare choices. 2: Clinical practice guidelines.
- 18 BMJ 353: i2089
- 19 Claxton K, Sculpher MJ (2006) Using value of information analysis to prioritise health
- 20 research: some lessons from recent UK experience. Pharmacoeconomics 24: 1055-
- 21 68
- 22 Glasziou P, Del Mar C, Salisbury J (2003) Evidence-based medicine workbook.
- 23 London: British Medical Journal Books
- 24 Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Vist GE et al. for the GRADE working group (2008) GRADE:
- 25 <u>an emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of</u>
- 26 <u>recommendations</u>. BMJ 336: 924 (see also the <u>GRADE website</u>)
- 27 Joint Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health/Neonatal and Paediatric
- 28 Pharmacists Group Standing Committee on Medicines (2013) The use of unlicensed
- 29 <u>medicines or licensed medicines for unlicensed applications in paediatric practice</u>

- 1 Kelly MP, Moore TA (2012) The judgement process in evidence-based medicine and
- 2 health technology assessment. Social Theory and Health 10:1–19
- 3 Michie S, Johnston M (2004) Changing clinical behaviour by making guidelines
- 4 <u>specific</u>. British Medical Journal 328: 343–5
- 5 Nuffield Council on Bioethics (2007) Public health: ethical issues. London: Nuffield
- 6 Council on Bioethics
- 7 Sackett DL, Straus SE, Richardson WS (2000) Evidence-based medicine: how to
- 8 practice and teach EBM. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone
- 9 Schünemann HJ, Mustafa R, Brozek J et al. for the GRADE working group (2016)
- 10 GRADE Guidelines: 16. GRADE evidence to decision frameworks for tests in clinical
- practice and public health. Journal of Clinical Epidemiology 76: 89–98
- 12 Guyatt GH,
- 13 Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (2015) SIGN 50. A guideline developer's
- 14 <u>handbook, revised edition</u>. Edinburgh: Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network
- 15 Tannahill A (2008) Beyond evidence to ethics: a decision making framework for
- 16 <u>health promotion, public health and health improvement</u>. Health Promotion
- 17 International 23: 380–90
- 18 Weightman A, Ellis S, Cullum A et al. (2005) Grading evidence and
- 19 recommendations for public health interventions: developing and piloting a
- 20 framework. London: Health Development Agency

22

The validation process for draft guidelines, and dealing with stakeholder comments

- 3 Consultation with stakeholders is an integral part of the guideline development
- 4 process. Comments received from registered stakeholders are a vital part of the
- 5 quality-assurance and peer-review processes, and it is important that they are
- 6 addressed appropriately. Registered stakeholders and respondents are notified of
- 7 the consultation dates in advance via the guideline page on the NICE website, and
- 8 are reminded by email.
- 9 This chapter describes the validation process for draft guidelines. It includes
- information on what happens during the consultation, the principles of responding to
- stakeholder comments after the consultation and when a second consultation may
- 12 be needed.

1

2

- Before the draft guideline is signed off for consultation, an equality impact
- 14 assessment is completed by the developer and the committee chair to show which
- equality issues have been identified and considered during guideline development.
- 16 The equality impact assessment is signed off by a member of NICE staff with
- 17 responsibly for quality assurance, and published on the NICE website with the draft
- guideline. The assessment is updated by the developer and the committee chair
- 19 after the consultation.

20

10.1 What happens during consultation

- 21 Commenting on the draft guideline
- 22 The draft version of the guideline (recommendations, rationales, committee
- discussions, evidence reviews and methods) is posted on the NICE website for
- 24 consultation with registered stakeholders and respondents. Stakeholders can
- 25 register at any point during guideline development. NICE informs registered
- stakeholders and respondents that the draft is available and invites them to comment
- by the deadline. Questions for stakeholders are posted with the draft guideline. The
- 28 purpose of these questions is to seek stakeholder views on factors such as the
- 29 potential equality impact. NICE also asks stakeholders to comment on
- recommendations identified as likely to substantially increase costs, and their
- justification, and to consider whether any other draft recommendations are expected

- to add substantial costs. Questions related to implementation may also be included
- 2 to identify practitioners who are already implementing the draft recommendations, or
- 3 resources that could be fed into the <u>NICE endorsement scheme</u>.
- 4 Consultation usually lasts for 6 weeks. A 4-week consultation may be used for partial
- 5 updates of guidelines or small guidelines (for example, guidelines on systems and
- 6 processes that relate to the use of medicines in different care settings and within
- 7 provider and commissioning organisations).
- 8 NICE is unable to accept:
- more than 1 set of comments from each registered stakeholder organisation
- comments that are not presented correctly on the form provided
- comments with attachments such as research articles, letters or leaflets.
- 12 In these cases, NICE will invite a registered stakeholder to resubmit a single set of
- comments with no attachments before the consultation deadline. NICE is unable to
- 14 accept any comments received after the deadline.
- 15 Comments should be constructed as reasoned argument and be submitted for the
- purpose of improving the draft guideline. NICE reserves the right not to respond to
- 17 comments that are hostile or inappropriate.
- Stakeholders and respondents should make sure that any confidential information or
- information that the owner would not wish to be made public is clearly underlined
- 20 and highlighted (see the section on confidential information in chapter 5 for more
- 21 details). Confidential information should be kept to a minimum. Stakeholders should
- 22 explain why the information is confidential and if and when it will become publicly
- 23 available.
- 24 Where views on the guideline are shared by more than 1 stakeholder organisation,
- NICE encourages these organisations to work together to produce a joint response.
- 26 This should be submitted by 1 registered stakeholder; other stakeholders supporting
- the joint response should respond to the consultation noting their endorsement.
- When registering, and when commenting on the draft scope and draft guideline,
- 29 stakeholders are asked to disclose whether their organisation has any direct or

- indirect links to, or receives or has ever received funding from, the tobacco industry.
- 2 Disclosures will be included with the published consultation responses.

3 Approaches to additional consultation

- 4 When a draft guideline on novel, complex or sensitive areas is issued for
- 5 consultation the developer may, in exceptional cases, decide that the feasibility of
- 6 the draft recommendations should also be tested. This may be done in fieldwork with
- 7 people providing services, or a targeted consultation with people using services.
- 8 For example, it may be important to explore how easy it will be for policy makers,
- 9 commissioners, practitioners and professionals to implement the draft
- 10 recommendations and how the recommendations might work in practice.
- 11 It may also be important to test draft recommendations directly with people using
- services, and where appropriate their families or carers.
- 13 Sometimes additional consultation will be considered because there is a lack of
- evidence on the views and experiences of people affected by the guideline, or
- NICE's standard processes need to be adapted or supplemented to incorporate user
- perspectives. This could be for guidelines covering children and young people, or
- 17 people with a learning disability or cognitive impairment (see section 3.2 and
- appendix B for more information).
- 19 The main criteria for considering additional consultation are:
- the topic covers novel or sensitive areas, or
- the evidence, such as evidence on users' views is lacking, or
- people affected by the guideline are not participants in the guideline's
- decision-making and consultation processes (for example, children).
- 24 The developer should document the reasons for the additional consultation, with a
- 25 proposal including consideration of the methods to be used, and the anticipated
- costs. The proposal should be discussed with members of NICE staff with a quality
- assurance role, and approved by the centre director. If the work is approved, the
- reasons and methods should be documented in the guideline.

- 1 Additional consultation usually happens at the same time as draft guideline
- 2 consultation, but can be undertaken earlier (for example, to seek views and
- 3 experiences of people affected by the guideline when there is a lack of evidence, or
- 4 to validate selected draft recommendations with people using services, policy
- 5 makers, commissioners, practitioners and professionals before guideline
- 6 consultation). Occasionally additional consultation may be needed at more than one
- 7 stage of guideline development.
- 8 The results of all consultations are considered by the committee. The committee
- 9 uses this information to refine and prioritise the recommendations after consultation.
- 10 This includes making them more specific to different groups of practitioners, where
- 11 appropriate.
- 12 Further details on approaches to additional consultation are given in appendix B.

13 External expert review

- 14 Although NICE does not routinely commission peer review from external experts,
- members of NICE staff with a quality assurance role, or the developer, may
- occasionally consider arranging additional external expert review of part or all of a
- guideline, or an evidence review, executable model or economic analysis. For
- example, review by external experts may be valuable if novel methods have been
- 19 used in developing an evidence review.
- 20 External expert reviewers may include practitioners, those commissioning care,
- 21 academics (for example, with expertise in economic or meta-analysis), or people
- with a lay perspective. Experts are selected on the basis of their experience in the
- 23 particular issue under review.
- 24 External expert review may take place during guideline development or during
- consultation on the draft guideline. If it occurs during development the comments are
- 26 not published, but the reviewer(s) should be named in the guideline. Comments from
- 27 external expert reviewers during the development of the guideline should be
- discussed by the committee. If the reviewers also comment during consultation, their
- 29 comments are responded to in the same way as comments from registered
- 30 stakeholders and are published in the guideline consultation table on the NICE

- website under 'external expert reviewers'. All external expert reviewers are required
- 2 to complete a declaration of interests form (see section 3.6).

3 10.2 Principles of responding to stakeholder comments

- 4 After consultation the committee discusses the comments received during
- 5 consultation, proposes any changes needed to the guideline, and agrees the final
- 6 wording of the recommendations.
- 7 This section describes how developers should respond to consultation comments.
- 8 The same principles apply when responding to comments on the draft scope (see
- 9 chapter 2).
- 10 Developers must take the following key points into account when responding to
- 11 comments from registered stakeholders:
- Each comment must be acknowledged and answered as directly, fully and with as
- much information as possible.
- For a draft guideline, the committee must consider whether changes to the
- guideline are needed as a result of consultation comments; any changes to the
- guideline must be agreed by the committee before publication.
- If changes are made to a guideline as a result of a consultation comment, this
- must be made clear in the response to the comment. If no changes have been
- made, it should be clear from the response why not.
- Developers should maintain an audit trail of any changes made to the guideline.
- 21 Registered stakeholders who have commented on the draft guideline are sent the
- 22 final guideline, and comments and responses, in confidence 2 weeks before
- publication (see chapter 11). Comments and responses are made available on the
- NICE website when the final guideline is published.
- 25 NICE reserves the right to summarise and edit comments received during
- consultations, or not to publish them at all, if we consider the comments are too long,
- or publication would be unlawful or otherwise inappropriate.
- 28 Comments received from non-registered stakeholders and individuals are reviewed
- by the committee. A formal response is not given and these comments are not made

- available on the NICE website. However, if they result in changes to the guideline
- 2 this is recorded in the committee meeting minutes.
- 3 Comments received after the deadline are not considered and are not responded to;
- 4 in such cases the sender will be informed.
- 5 When evidence is highlighted by stakeholders during consultation, this should be
- 6 considered for inclusion in the guideline. The developer will take the evidence into
- 7 account:
- if it meets all of the inclusion criteria for the relevant review (as set out in the
- 9 review protocol), and should have been identified in the guideline
- 10 searches/screening
- if it falls within the timeframe for the guideline search parameters.
- 12 Any effects on the guideline of including new evidence will be considered, and any
- 13 further action agreed between the developer and NICE staff with a quality assurance
- 14 role.
- 15 If the new evidence falls outside of the timeframe for the guideline searches, the
- impact on the guideline will still need to be considered, and any further action agreed
- between the developer and NICE staff with a quality assurance role.

18 10.3 When a second consultation may be needed

- 19 In exceptional circumstances, NICE may consider the need for a further 4-week
- 20 stakeholder consultation after the first consultation. This additional consultation may
- 21 be needed if either:
- information or data that would significantly alter the guideline were omitted from
- the first draft, or
- evidence was misinterpreted in the first draft and the amended interpretation
- significantly alters the draft recommendations.
- 26 NICE staff with responsibility for guideline quality assurance make the final decision
- 27 on whether to hold a second consultation.

11 Finalising and publishing the guideline

- 2 This chapter describes quality assurance and sign-off of the guideline after
- 3 consultation, publication of the guideline, and launching and promoting the guideline.

4 11.1 Quality assurance of the guideline

- 5 After agreed changes have been made to the guideline in response to consultation
- 6 comments from registered stakeholders, the guideline is reviewed by NICE staff with
- 7 responsibility for guideline quality assurance. They check that the changes made to
- 8 the guideline are appropriate and that the developer has responded appropriately to
- 9 the registered stakeholders' comments. Further changes to the guideline may be
- needed; the developer continues to maintain an audit trail of all the changes. The
- NICE Pathway (everything NICE says on a topic in an interactive flowchart) and any
- supporting resources are amended in line with any changes to the guideline. These
- also undergo quality assurance and are signed off within NICE.

14 Equality impact assessment

- 15 Before the guideline is signed off for publication, the equality impact assessment is
- updated by the developer and the committee chair to show whether any additional
- equality issues have been identified during consultation, and how these have been
- 18 addressed. The equality impact assessment is published on the NICE website with
- 19 the final guideline.

1

20 11.2 Signing off the guideline

- 21 NICE's Guidance Executive considers and approves guidelines for publication on
- behalf of the NICE Board. The Guidance Executive is made up of NICE executive
- 23 directors, centre directors and the communications director.
- 24 When considering a guideline for publication, the Guidance Executive reviews a
- 25 report from NICE staff with responsibility for guideline quality assurance. The report
- details whether the guideline:
- addresses all the issues identified in the scope
- is consistent with the evidence quoted
- was developed using the agreed process and methods

- was developed with due regard to the need to eliminate discrimination, advance
- 2 equality and foster good relations
- will lead to a resource impact when implemented.
- 4 If any major issue is identified by the Guidance Executive it may be necessary for the
- 5 committee to meet again to address the problem.
- 6 The Guidance Executive does not usually comment at other stages during the
- 7 development of the guideline.

8 11.3 Releasing an advance copy to stakeholders

- 9 Registered stakeholders who have commented on the draft guideline (see
- 10 chapter 10) and agreed to conditions of confidentiality, are sent the final guideline,
- the evidence reviews and a copy of the responses to stakeholder consultation
- comments 2 weeks before publication. This information is confidential until the
- guideline is published. This step allows registered stakeholders to highlight to NICE
- any substantive errors, and to prepare for publication and implementation. It is not an
- opportunity to comment further on the guideline. NICE should be notified of any
- substantive errors at least 1 week before publication of the guideline.

17 **11.4 Publication**

- 18 The guideline, including evidence reviews, methods, NICE Pathway, key messages
- 19 for the public and most support tools (see chapter 12) are published on the NICE
- website at the same time.

21 11.5 Launching and promoting the guideline

- 22 The developer and committee work with NICE's media relations team and, if
- 23 implementation support projects are planned, the implementation lead to
- 24 disseminate and promote awareness of the guideline at the time of publication and
- 25 afterwards. It is useful to consider at an early stage of guideline development how
- the guideline and its support tools will be promoted.
- 27 Members from the NICE media relations team discuss with the developer and the
- committee opportunities for promoting the guideline. Committee members may be
- asked to take part in such activities.

- 1 With help from the committee and the developer, they identify how to reach relevant
- 2 audiences for the guideline, including people using services, carers, the public,
- 3 practitioners and providers.
- 4 NICE may use a range of different methods to raise awareness of the guideline.
- 5 These include standard approaches such as:
- notifying registered stakeholders of publication
- 7 publicising the guideline through NICE's newsletter and alerts
- issuing a press release or briefing as appropriate, posting news articles on the
- 9 NICE website, using social media channels, and publicising the guideline within
- 10 NICE.
- NICE may also use other means of raising awareness of the guideline for example,
- training programmes, conferences, implementation workshops, NICE field team
- support and other speaking engagements. Some of these may be suggested by
- committee members (particularly members affiliated to organisations for people
- using services and carer organisations). Each guideline is different and activities for
- raising awareness will vary depending on the type and content of the guideline.

17 Press launches

- 18 The media relations team may set up interviews or filming with committee members
- 19 ahead of the guideline launch or on the day itself. NICE can make good use of case
- 20 studies or experts to illustrate or explain the guideline recommendations. They help
- 21 to give context to the guideline, explain why the work has been carried out and can
- 22 illustrate where recommendations have already been put in place or where lessons
- have been learned. Information may be provided to the media under embargo until
- the launch date for the guideline. Committee members should ensure that NICE is
- 25 made aware of any press enquiries they receive before the guideline is launched and
- should not answer them without involvement of the media relations team.
- A guideline launch is usually accompanied by activity on social media which may
- include graphics, animations, videos and quotes from key committee members or
- 29 NICE directors. In most cases, this work will be prepared ahead of the launch.

- 1 Committee members may also wish to arrange separate events at which
- 2 practitioners, providers, commissioners and people using services and the public can
- 3 learn more about the guideline. In such cases, the NICE's media relations team
- 4 should be notified at the earliest possible opportunity.
- 5 When there is likely to be substantial media interest, NICE may hold a press
- 6 conference before publication of the guideline. This form of briefing allows for a more
- 7 structured and considered exchange of information between NICE and the media,
- 8 during which any potentially controversial aspects of the guideline can be explained
- 9 and set in context. It also gives journalists an opportunity to interview people
- involved in developing the guideline and other contributors including people with
- experiences related to the guideline or representatives from charities and other
- stakeholders who are supportive of the work.

12 Resources to support putting the guideline into

2 practice

1

3

8

20

12.1 Introduction

- 4 Guideline committees consider implementation issues as an integral part of
- 5 developing a guideline, and take account of comments on the draft guideline. NICE
- 6 teams work with committees to produce tools to help people put the guideline into
- 7 practice, in line with our implementation strategy.

12.2 Tools for planning and resource impact assessment

- 9 NICE provides a baseline assessment tool for each guideline at the time of
- publication. This is a modifiable Excel spread sheet that organisations can use to
- identify whether they are in line with practice recommended by NICE, and to help
- them plan and record activity to implement the guideline recommendations.
- NICE resource impact assessment tools are intended to help organisations assess
- the potential costs and savings associated with implementing the guideline. A
- 15 resource impact report and an associated resource impact template are produced for
- guidelines that will have a substantial resource impact. The template enables a local
- estimate to be made of the potential costs and savings involved in implementation. If
- the resource impact is deemed not to be substantial, a 1-page resource impact
- 19 statement is produced.

12.3 Tools to support decision making

- 21 Visual summaries and quick guides
- 22 For some guidelines, a need for a visual summary of part of the guideline may be
- identified. For example, where practice needs to change, a practitioner needs to
- 24 make quick decisions, or a specific audience needs support in implementing the
- 25 recommendations.
- 26 Discussions about any visual summary or quick guide should happen as soon as
- 27 possible. If NICE and the developer agree that a tool of this type will be helpful, the
- NICE editor will work with the developer to develop it for publication alongside the
- 29 guideline.

- 1 For some topics, a quick quide is produced to help with putting recommendations
- 2 into practice (for example, in a care home), or to support people using services to
- 3 understand what to expect, and make decisions about their care.

4 Decision aids

- 5 If the committee identifies a preference-sensitive decision point in the guideline (see
- 6 chapter 9.3) NICE may develop a decision aid.
- 7 Decision aids supplement or support the discussion between the person and their
- 8 health or care professional about a preference-sensitive decision point, rather than
- 9 replacing discussion. They are in simple, non-medical language, so that a person
- making the decision can refer to the aid after their appointment, and discuss it with
- their family and carers. Depending on the topic and type of decision, decision aids
- may include:
- a short summary of evidence on the different options
- commonly asked questions
- a table to help people think about how important each of the possible benefits and
- harms are for them
- a diagram summarising the risks and benefits.
- 18 If the committee identifies an area where there is a particular need for support with
- decision-making, the developer should alert NICE staff with responsibility for quality
- 20 assurance during guideline development. NICE will decide whether to produce a
- 21 decision aid.

22 **12.4** Working with other organisations and endorsing resources

- Organisations and individuals, both lay and practitioner, can play a key role in
- supporting the implementation of the guideline and NICE may work with external
- 25 partners to help with this.
- 26 Implementation resources which have been jointly developed by NICE in
- 27 collaboration with key national partner organisations, can be co-badged and carry
- the NICE logo, providing they are approved by a director and the placement of the
- 29 logo is approved by the communications team.

- 1 Organisations other than NICE may produce resources for guideline implementation.
- 2 These could include implementation and adoption resources, learning
- 3 modules/educational packages and patient decision aids. These resources can be
- 4 endorsed by NICE. A guideline should usually only link to externally developed tools
- 5 and resources when the tools and resources have been endorsed by the NICE
- 6 <u>endorsement programme</u>. Endorsement confirms that the resources accurately
- 7 reflect the content of the NICE guideline and can be updated as needed. Endorsed
- 8 resources do not carry the NICE logo. If developers identify a relevant tool during
- 9 development of a guideline, they should contact the <u>endorsement team</u>.
- 10 NICE also publishes shared learning case studies, which show how organisations
- 11 have put our recommendations into practice. If developers hear about any examples
- of good practice, they should contact the <u>shared learning team</u>.

13 **12.5 Other NICE implementation support**

- 14 The following services and resources help to put all NICE guidance and standards
- 15 into practice:
- The implementation support team at NICE works with national partners to support
- implementation.
- Members of the NICE field team support local organisations to implement NICE
- 19 guidance and use quality standards.
- Medicines and Prescribing Associates deliver specialist support for high-quality,
- cost-effective prescribing and medicines optimisation through its network and local
- workshops.
- We publish a database with data on uptake of NICE recommendations.
- An implementation strategy group made up of external academics meets twice a
- 25 year to inform the NICE implementation strategy with new and ongoing
- developments in implementation science.
- We also seek feedback from people who use our guidelines to make them, and any
- resources to support implementation, as easy to use as possible.

1 12.6 References and further reading

- 2 Auerbach AD, Landefeld CS, Shojania KG (2007) The tension between needing to
- 3 improve care and knowing how to do it. New England Journal of Medicine 357: 608–
- 4 13
- 5 Baker R, Camosso-Stefinovic J, Gillies C et al. (2010) Tailored interventions to
- 6 overcome identified barriers to change: effects on professional practice and health
- 7 care outcomes. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews issue 3: CD005470
- 8 Cabana MD, Rand CS, Powe NR et al. (1999) Why don't physicians follow clinical
- 9 practice guidelines? A framework for improvement. JAMA 282: 1458–65
- Eccles M, Grimshaw J, Walker A et al. (2005) Changing the behavior of healthcare
- 11 professionals: the use of theory in promoting the uptake of research findings. Journal
- of Clinical Epidemiology 58: 107–12
- 13 Kneale D, Goldman R, Thomas J (2016) A scoping review characterising the
- 14 <u>activities and landscape around implementing NICE guidance</u> [online; accessed 21
- 15 February 2018]
- Leng G, Moore V, Abraham S, editors (2014) Achieving high quality care practical
- 17 experience from NICE. Chichester: Wiley
- 18 Michie S, Johnston M, Hardeman W et al. (2008) From theory to intervention:
- mapping theoretically derived behavioural determinants to behaviour change.
- 20 Techniques in Applied Psychology: An International Review 57: 660–80

13 Ensuring that published guidelines are current and

2 accurate

1

- 3 This chapter describes the process and methods for checking that published
- 4 guidelines are current and deciding whether updates are needed (surveillance).

5 13.1 Aims of surveillance

- 6 The aim of surveillance is to check that guidelines are up to date. This is done by
- 7 exploring if there is any new evidence to contradict, reinforce or clarify guideline
- 8 recommendations. Surveillance also identifies new interventions that may need to be
- 9 considered within the guideline. Finally, it explores changes in context that may
- mean modifications are needed, for example, changes in policy, infrastructure,
- 11 legislation or costs.
- NICE has more than 270 published guidelines so the number of checks needed is
- considerable. A proactive approach is taken that includes reacting to events at any
- time after guideline publication (for example, publication of a key study) and a
- standard check every 5 years. Where possible, surveillance of guidelines covering
- similar populations or settings is undertaken at the same time.

17 **13.2 Reacting to events**

- 18 Some topic areas are fast moving and this increases the risk of guidelines having
- 19 out-of-date recommendations. Therefore, NICE maintains an event tracker
- 20 containing information on key events, such as ongoing studies, that are judged to be
- 21 relevant to the guideline content. This means that NICE can react quickly to changes
- in the evidence base, by initiating a check of the guideline as soon as the event has
- occurred. A check does not necessarily mean that the guideline will be updated.
- 24 An event that could affect the guideline could include:
- publication of a study that is directly relevant to NICE guidance
- substantial changes in policy or legislation
- development of a related piece of NICE guidance.

- 1 Events are identified through constant intelligence gathering, for example, the
- 2 standard check, the guideline development process and stakeholder
- 3 correspondence and enquiries.

4 Process for reacting to events

- 5 The NICE surveillance team considers how an event could affect a guideline. If an
- 6 event is likely to affect guideline recommendations a check is performed before the
- 7 next scheduled standard check. The check may include literature searches, if
- 8 needed, involving the same approach as for the <u>standard check</u>.
- 9 Checks in response to events do not undergo stakeholder consultation because they
- focus only on an important event and potentially a small section of a guideline.
- However, the decisions are communicated on the NICE website.
- 12 If NICE's Guidance Executive decides that an update of the guideline is needed after
- this type of check, registered stakeholders are informed of the planned approach.

14 13.3 The standard check

- 15 The median lifespan of a clinical guideline is 60 months (Alderson et al. 2014). More
- recent work within NICE incorporating data for public health guidelines supports this
- 17 conclusion. Therefore, all NICE guidelines will be checked every 5 years using the
- approach described below.

19 Topic expert engagement

- 20 Topic experts including members of NICE's Expert Advisers Panel are invited to
- 21 participate in surveillance. But if their response is limited or further specialist input is
- 22 needed, we may seek input from other experts such as government bodies or
- 23 representatives from a Quality Standards Advisory Committee.

24 Intelligence gathering

- 25 Topic experts are surveyed for their views on the continued relevance of the
- published guideline and recommendations, and their knowledge of recent
- developments in the topic area and any important new evidence since publication of
- the guideline. We may also ask stakeholders for their views, including organisations
- 29 representing the interests of patients, people using services, carers and the public.
- 30 Additional intelligence might include:

- external queries and comments received since publication of the guideline
 (these are collated in an issues log for consideration during surveillance)
 - related NICE guidance and quality standards (including placeholder statements in NICE quality standards) developed since the guideline was published
 - information about guideline implementation, including information about the uptake of the recommendations
 - changes in licensing status of medicines
- updated or new national policy.

10 Literature searching

- Published evidence is identified through searching a range of bibliographic
- databases relevant to the topic, which are generally based on those searched for the
- published guideline. Sources searched may vary depending on the topic. In general,
- 14 MEDLINE, MEDLINE in Process, Embase, Cochrane Database of Systematic
- 15 Reviews and Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials (CENTRAL) would be
- 16 considered.

3

4

5

6

7

8

26

27

28

29

30

31

17 **Search approaches**

- 18 The search approach will vary between topics and may depend on priority areas
- 19 highlighted through topic expert engagement and intelligence gathering. The
- 20 following search approaches can be used:
- population or population/intervention search as needed for the guideline
 scope with
- 23 randomised controlled trials (RCTs) and systematic reviews as a default.
- if RCTs are not appropriate because of the topic or guideline (for example,
 purely diagnostic), then other study types will be considered
 - focused search(es) for a specific question or a new question, meaning that
 the study type searched for (RCTs or observational studies) should reflect the
 type expected to address the question.
 - citation search forward/back (this option would be supplemented with either a restrictive full scope search or focused searches).

Other considerations

- 32 It may be appropriate to consider setting limits for the searches, which could include,
- 33 but are not limited to:

- study design using appropriate search filter(s)
- date
- location
- population(s)/subpopulation(s)
- 5 intervention
- service delivery aspect
- prognostic factors.

8 Search period

- 9 The search period will start at the:
 - end of the search for the last update of the guideline
- end of the search for the last standard check.
- 12 The search date ends on the date the search is conducted.
- 13 **Decision making**
- 14 Proposals on the need to update a guideline include an element of judgement and
- are based on an assessment of the relevant evidence published since guideline
- publication (abstracts of primary or secondary evidence), information obtained
- 17 through intelligence gathering and feedback from stakeholder consultation.
- 18 The update proposal will be based on the following options:
- no update (check again in 5 years)
- no update at present but date of next check should be brought forward or
- 21 pushed back (this decision would be made exceptionally, for example where it
- is clear that new evidence critical to this decision is due to be published)
- full update (develop replacement guideline)
- partial update (update defined sections of the guideline)
- transferring the guideline to the static list
- refreshing the guideline (see section 14.4)
- withdrawing some recommendations or the whole guideline.
- When a guideline is being updated, the original scope may be used (unchanged),
- the original scope may be modified (for example, where new areas have been
- identified that require an extension to the scope) or a new scope may be developed.
- 31 See chapters on 2 and 14 for further details.

- 1 Stakeholder consultation
- 2 For all proposals other than a full update, we consult with stakeholders for 2 weeks.
- 3 There is no stakeholder consultation on the proposal for a full update.
- 4 Signing off the final decision
- 5 All surveillance proposals go through a validation process at NICE (including sign-off
- by the associate director and centre director) before approval is sought from NICE's
- 7 Guidance Executive.

8

13.4 Static list check

- 9 Guidelines are considered static when the recommendations are still current and
- should continue to be implemented, but are unlikely to change in the foreseeable
- 11 future (because the evidence base or practice is unlikely to change). Guidelines are
- only considered static after consultation with stakeholders, and providing the
- 13 following criteria are met:
- there is a decision not to update following a standard check and no major ongoing research expected to publish before the next standard check, or
- the guideline is not intervention-based (for example, it focuses on commissioning or implementation) and no major changes to commissioning or service configurations have occurred since guideline publication, or are expected.
- 20 Following stakeholder consultation, a proposal to add the guideline to the static list
- 21 may no longer be appropriate if stakeholders have made us aware of:
- relevant research or
- pertinent issues that need to be monitored or
- information that would impact on the no update proposal.
- 25 Any ongoing research would be added to the event tracker to feed into a guideline
- check process.
- 27 Process
- 28 Static guidelines are looked at 5 years after they go on the static list and then every
- 29 5 years to determine whether they should undergo a standard check. This
- 30 preliminary check is similar to the standard check but no literature searches are
- done. Topic experts are asked to supply information on any new published evidence
- that could affect the recommendations. Information is also gathered from the event
- tracker. This is likely to highlight the main events that could trigger a standard check

- and a possible update of the guideline. This process is applied consistently across
- 2 static list guidelines with key decisions recorded as part of an audit trail. Guidelines
- 3 are removed from the static list when the preliminary check suggests new evidence
- 4 may affect the recommendation. They then undergo the standard check as
- 5 described in <u>section 13.3</u>.

6 13.5 References and further reading

- 7 Alderson LJ, Alderson P, Tan T (2014) Median life span of a cohort of National
- 8 Institute for Health and Care Excellence clinical guidelines was about 60 months.
- 9 Journal of Clinical Epidemiology 67: 52–5.

10

- 11 Shekelle P, Eccles MP, Grimshaw JM et al. (2001) When should clinical guidelines
- be updated? British Medical Journal 323: 155–7
- 13 Shekelle PG, Ortiz E, Rhodes S et al. (2001) Validity of the Agency for Healthcare
- 14 Research and Quality clinical practice guidelines: how quickly do guidelines become
- 15 outdated? JAMA 286: 1461-7

14 Updating guidelines

2 14.1 Scheduling updates

- When scheduling updates of guidelines, NICE prioritises topics according to need for
- 4 both new and updated guidelines.

5 14.2 Full updates of guidelines

- 6 If a full update of a guideline is needed either:
- 7 a new scope is prepared, following the process described in chapter 2, or
- the scope of the published guideline is used and registered stakeholders are
- 9 informed.

1

- Recruitment of committee members follows the usual process (see chapter 3).
- Where possible, the developer informs all members of the topic-specific committee,
- or topic-expert members of the standing committee, for the published guideline that a
- 13 new committee is being recruited. The composition of the committee should be
- tailored to new requirements if a new scope has been developed. The guideline is
- developed using the same methods and process as for a new guideline and the draft
- is subject to the normal 4- to 6-week consultation period (see chapter 10). The
- developer should maintain records appropriate for audit (see section 3.8). The usual
- process for finalising and publishing the guideline is followed (see chapter 11).

19 **14.3** Partial updates of guidelines

- 20 If only part of a guideline needs to be updated, either:
- a new scope is prepared, following the process described in chapter 2, or
- parts of the scope of the published guideline are used (as determined by the
- check of the need for an update; see chapter 13), and registered stakeholders are
- informed.
- In both cases, the scope is clear about exactly which sections of the guideline are
- being updated and which are not, including any sections that may be withdrawn (for
- example, if they are now covered in another guideline). Recommendations that are
- outside the scope of an update may be refreshed (see <u>section 14.4</u>).

- 1 The guideline is developed using the same methods and process as for a new
- 2 guideline. Partial updates using the scope of the published guideline use the review
- 3 questions and review protocols already defined by the existing guideline. However, if
- 4 the review questions and/or protocols are unavailable, need refinement, or if there is
- 5 ambiguity in the published guideline, the developer may approach the committee
- 6 members with topic expertise for advice before starting the evidence review.
- 7 Partial updates of guidelines are subject to the same level of scrutiny as full updates
- 8 and new guidelines. The underlying principles of transparency of process and
- 9 methodological rigour continue to hold. The draft is subject to a 4- or 6-week
- consultation period, depending on length and complexity (see chapter 10). The
- developer should maintain records appropriate for audit (see section 3.8). The usual
- process for finalising and publishing the guideline is followed (see chapter 11).

14.4 Refreshing the guideline

- Refreshing a guideline allows us to improve the usability of recommendations
- without changing the intent and therefore without the need for an evidence review or
- 16 committee input. All refreshing changes are signed off by NICE's Guidance
- 17 Executive.

- 18 Refreshing changes can be made to guideline recommendations even when the
- 19 surveillance decision is not to update the guideline. All changes to recommendations
- 20 made as part of the surveillance process should be agreed by the NICE surveillance
- team (see chapter 13).
- When a partial update has been agreed, the publishing team also identifies
- 23 recommendations that may need refreshing to feed into the scoping process.
- Occasionally during development of partial updates, additional recommendations
- 25 that are not part of the update may be identified for refreshing by the committee or
- the publishing team.
- 27 Refreshing might involve:
- amending or adding cross references to other NICE guidance or hyperlinks to
- 29 other NICE-endorsed tools or resources

- adding or amending a footnote to reflect changes to a medicine's marketing
- 2 authorisation, to reflect changes in service configuration (for example, a change
- from primary care trusts to clinical commissioning groups) or a change to an
- 4 organisation's name
- ensuring recommendations take into account the latest government policy or
- 6 guidelines, for example, on alcohol consumption
- amending recommendations to reflect the current practice context, for example,
- 8 removing references to tools or resources that no longer exist
- bringing recommendations in line with NICE's current policy on wording without
- affecting the intent, for example:
- reflecting the involvement of people in decisions about their care
- using person-centred language.
- 13 Refreshing changes that are made during scoping and guideline development should
- be agreed with NICE staff with responsibility for quality assurance.

14.5 Presenting updates

- 16 A full update replaces an existing guideline and has a new set of recommendations,
- a new set of rationale and impact sections, new evidence reviews and new sections
- detailing the committee's discussion of the evidence. When a full update is published
- the old guideline is withdrawn. The NICE Pathway is revised in line with the new
- 20 recommendations.

15

- 21 When presenting partial updates of guidelines, the aim is to ensure that there is a
- 22 single set of publications that bring together the updated information and relevant
- 23 information from all previous versions of the guideline. In this way, readers of the
- 24 updated guideline will be able to easily identify what has changed. The rest of this
- section covers general principles to be used when part of a guideline has been
- 26 updated.

27 Preparing a partial update for consultation

- 28 Before consultation on a partial update, the developer should check the following:
- All sections have been updated as agreed.
- It is clear which sections have been updated and are open for comment during
- 31 consultation.

- Recommendations from sections which have not been updated have been
- 2 checked to determine whether any changes are essential (for example, if a
- 3 medicine is no longer available).
- Refreshing changes (see section 14.4) to recommendations in sections that have
- 5 not been updated are kept to a minimum (for example, changing from the passive
- 6 voice to direct instructions).
- A summary of changes to recommendations is included.
- The status of any guidance incorporated in the previous version of the guideline
- 9 has been confirmed with NICE. For example, has the other guidance been
- updated by the guideline update?
- All recommendations (new, updated and unchanged) have been assessed with
- respect to NICE's equality duties.

13 Preparing the final version of a partial update for publication

- 14 The developer should check the following:
- It is clear which sections have been updated, and whether the recommendations
- have been updated or amended, or are unchanged from the previous published
- version of the guideline.
- The summary of changes to recommendations has been revised in line with the
- 19 final recommendations.
- 20 The NICE Pathway is also updated, and resources to support implementation are
- 21 checked for current relevance.

22 14.6 Post-publication changes

- 23 Measures are in place throughout the development of a guideline to avoid errors in
- 24 the collection, synthesis, interpretation or presentation of the evidence as far as
- possible. On rare occasions errors are found after publication of the guideline, or
- users may ask for clarification.
- 27 Corrections or changes to a published guideline are made if an error or lack of
- 28 clarity:
- puts users of health or care services at risk, or affects their care or provision of
- 30 services, or

- damages NICE's reputation, or
- significantly affects the meaning of a recommendation.
- 3 Errors or clarifications that do not warrant immediate changes to the guideline are
- 4 logged for consideration when the guideline undergoes surveillance (see chapter
- 5 13).
- 6 If an error or clarification meets the criteria for changing a published guideline,
- 7 NICE's process for dealing with post-publication changes is followed. An explanation
- 8 of the decisions and actions taken is sent to the person or organisation that reported
- 9 the error or requested clarification.
- 10 Sometimes recommendations need to be removed because a medicine has been
- removed from the market or a few recommendations have been updated or replaced
- by recommendations in another guideline.
- 13 The guideline and the NICE Pathway are amended. Resources to support
- implementation are also amended if necessary. The changes are explained in the
- guideline and pathway. Depending on the nature and significance of the change and
- the time since publication of the guideline, registered stakeholders may also be
- 17 notified.

18 Routine maintenance

- 19 Routine maintenance changes may also be made after publication of a guideline.
- 20 These include minor changes such as updating or fixing broken links or updating
- standard text in line with agreed template changes.

22 **14.7 References and further reading**

- 23 Clark E, Donovan EF, Schoettker P (2006) From outdated to updated, keeping
- clinical guidelines valid. International Journal for Quality in Health Care 18: 165–6
- 25 Eccles M, Rousseau N, Freemantle N (2002) Updating evidence-based clinical
- 26 guidelines. Journal of Health Services Research and Policy 7: 98–103
- 27 Shojania KG, Sampson M, Ansari MT et al. (2007) Updating systematic reviews.
- 28 AHRQ Technical Reviews and Summaries, technical review 16. Rockville, MD:
- 29 Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality

- 1 Turner T, Misso M, Harris C et al. (2008) <u>Development of evidence-based clinical</u>
- 2 <u>practice guidelines (CPGs): comparing approaches</u>. Implementation Science 3: 45–
- 3 52

© NICE 2018. All rights reserved. Subject to Notice of rights.